

C101C

THE WINDY
ĐẠI LỢI - HƯƠNG GIANG (Chủ biên)

Tủ sách ôn thi Đại học

CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ TIẾNG ANH ÔN THI TỐT NGHIỆP - ĐẠI HỌC

Hiệu đính: NGỌC MAI & NHUNG ĐỎ

THƯ VIỆN TỈNH BÌNH THUẬN

PVL /12971 / 13

Mọi ý kiến đóng góp của Quý độc giả xin gửi về:

Ban Biên tập sách ngoại ngữ The Windy

- Công ty cổ phần sách MCBooks

26/245 Mai Dịch - Cầu Giấy - Hà Nội

ĐT: 04.37921466

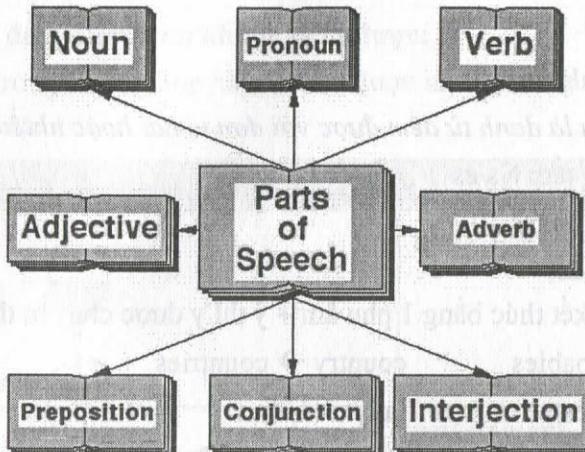
Email: thewindy@mcbooks.vn

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

UNIT 1

PARTS OF SPEECH
TỪ LOẠI

LÝ THUYẾT



I. DANH TỪ:



- ❖ Danh từ đếm được
- ❖ Danh từ không đếm được
- ❖ Danh từ vừa đếm được vừa không đếm được

1) Danh từ đếm được:

1. Hình thức số ít: a/an + N

Danh từ số ít là danh từ đếm được với đơn vị là một. (a/an + N)

- “a” đứng trước danh từ số ít bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm.



Eg: a book



a pen

CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ TIẾNG ANH
ÔN THI TỐT NGHIỆP – ĐẠI HỌC

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

16 Hàng Chuối - Hai Bà Trưng - Hà Nội

Điện thoại: (04) 9714896; (04) 9724770; Fax: (04) 9714899

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:

Giám đốc - Tổng biên tập: TS. PHẠM THỊ TRÂM

Biên tập: THÁI HÒA

Sửa bản in: MCBOOKS

Chế bản: LÊ LIÊN

Vẽ bìa: TRỌNG KIÊN

LIÊN KẾT XUẤT BẢN

CÔNG TY CỔ PHẦN SÁCH MCBOOKS

Địa chỉ: Số nhà 26, ngõ 245 Mai Dịch

Cầu Giấy, Hà Nội

Website: www.mcbooks.vn

Mã số: 2L/108DH2013

In 5.000 cuốn, khổ 16x24cm, tại Công ty cổ phần In Sao Việt

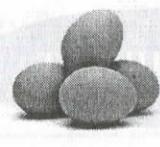
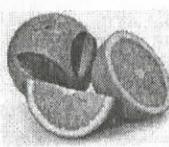
Số KHXH: 479-2013/CXB/31-68DHQGHN ngày 12/4/2013

Quyết định xuất bản số: 124LK-XH/QĐ-NXB DHQGHN

- “an” đứng trước danh từ số ít bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i).

Eg:

an apple an orange an egg an umbrella an island



2. Hình thức số nhiều:

Danh từ số nhiều là danh từ đếm được với đơn vị hai hoặc nhiều hơn.

- Hợp quy tắc: Ns/es

Eg: books, pens, boxes

- Bất quy tắc:

a. Danh từ kết thúc bằng 1 phụ âm + y thì y được chuyển thành ies.

baby → babies country → countries

fly → flies lady → ladies

b. Một số danh từ kết thúc bằng o thì ta thêm s.

kilo → kilos photo → photos piano → pianos

c. Một số danh từ kết thúc bằng f hoặc fe thì ta chuyển f hoặc fe thành ves.

half → halves life → lives wife → wives

d. Một số danh từ không thay đổi khi ở dạng số nhiều

aircraft → aircraft deer → deer series → series sheep → sheep

e. Một số danh từ khi sang số nhiều thì nguyên âm của chúng bị thay đổi

foot → feet man → men tooth → teeth

f. Danh từ luôn có hình thức và mang nghĩa số nhiều: clothes, scissors, spectacles, shorts, pants, jeans, trousers, pyjamas, binoculars, belongings, ...

g. Danh từ luôn mang nghĩa số nhiều: police, cattle, people, ...

h. Danh từ có hình thức số nhiều nhưng mang nghĩa số ít: news, mathematics, the United States, ...

Chú ý:

✓ Không có hình thức số nhiều (s/es)

✓ Không dùng với a/an/one/two...

✓ Có thể đi với từ chỉ đơn vị định lượng + of:

a bottle of milk, two litters of water, a loaf of bread, three sheets of paper, four pieces of chalk, a bar of chocolate, a gallon of petrol, ...

3) Danh từ vừa đếm được vừa không đếm được:

Một số danh từ trong trường hợp này là đếm được nhưng trong trường hợp khác lại không đếm được.

Dễm được	Không đếm được
 a glass (một cái ly)	glass (thủy tinh)
 two papers (hai tờ báo)	paper (giấy)
 three coffees (ba tách cà phê)	coffee (cà phê)
 two sugars (hai muỗng đường)	sugar (đường)

2) Danh từ không đếm được:

Là những thứ ta không thể đếm được trực tiếp (một, hai, ba, ...) như milk, water, rice, sugar, butter, salt, bread, news, information, advice, luggage, health, knowledge, equipment, iron, paper, glass, ...

BÀI TẬP

1. Give plural form of the following nouns.

Noun	Plural	Noun	Plural
1. Baby	11. Man
2. Child	12. Photo
3. Country	13. Piano
4. Aircraft	14. Sheep
5. Foot	15. Shelf
6. Key	16. Storey
7. Kilo	17. Story
8. Woman	18. Thief
9. Leaf	19. Tooth
10. Loaf	20. Wife

2. Circle the correct answer:

- They is/ are watching the house.
- Rabies is/ are a very dangerous disease.
- The news was/were better today.
- The stairs leads/ lead to the cellar.

II. TÍNH TỪ



❖ Vị trí của tính từ

❖ Trật tự của các tính từ trước danh từ

❖ Tính từ dùng như danh từ

1) Vị trí của tính từ:

1.1. Trước danh từ:

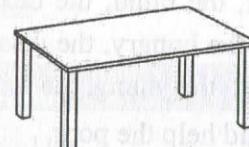
Eg: She is a beautiful girl.



1.2. Sau danh từ:

a) Chỉ sự đeo lường, tuổi tác:

Eg: He's twenty years old.

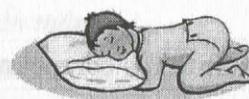


This table is two meters long.

b) Tính từ bắt đầu bằng chữ "a":

asleep (đang ngủ)	alight (bừng sáng)	alive (còn sống)
ablaze (bừng cháy)	awake (thức)	alike (giống nhau)
afloat (nổi),...		

Eg: I saw my son asleep on the floor.



c) Tính từ bỏ ngữ cho túc từ:

Eg: We should keep our room clean.

1.3. Sau các động từ nối (linking verbs):

be, become, feel, look, taste, sound, smell, seem, get, turn, appear ...

Eg: It becomes hot today.

1.4. Sau đại từ bắt định:

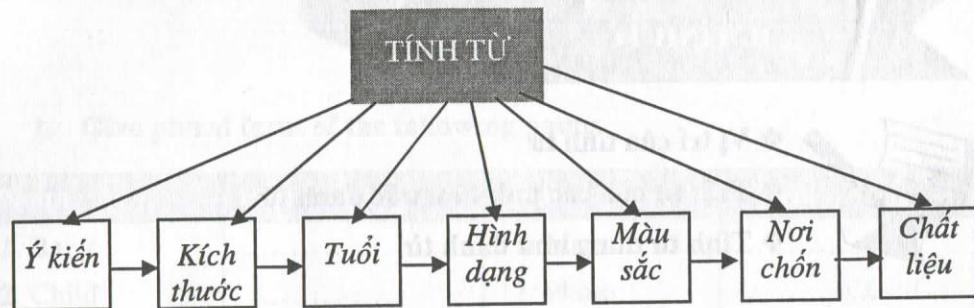
something, someone/body, anything, anyone/body, everything, everyone/body, nothing, no one, nobody.

Eg: Do you have anything important to tell me?

1.5. Sau trạng từ:

Eg: Your story is very interesting.

2) Trật tự của các tính từ trước danh từ:



Eg: A beautiful tall thin Vietnamese girl is standing over there.

3) Tính từ dùng như danh từ:

THE + ADJ → NOUN

the poor, the rich, the blind, the deaf, the old, the handicapped, the sick, the strong, the weak, the hungry, the disadvantaged, the unemployed, the disabled, the living, the dead, the young, the middle-aged.

Eg: The rich should help the poor.

BÀI TẬP

Put the adjectives into the correct order:

Eg: big/ black/ this box → this big black box

1. A heavy/ leather/ old case
2. Blue/ her/ new dress
3. Handmade/ expensive/ shoes
4. A nice/ carving/ sharp knife
5. A little/ noisy/ English car
6. A sunny/ lovely day

III. TRẠNG TỪ



- ❖ Phân loại trạng từ
- ❖ Vị trí của trạng từ
- ❖ Trật tự của trạng từ
- ❖ Chức năng của trạng từ

1) Phân loại trạng từ:

1.1 Trạng từ chỉ thể cách (adverb of manner):

- ✓ Cho ta biết một hành động được thực hiện như thế nào để trả lời cho câu hỏi HOW?
- ✓ Cách thành lập: ADJ + LY (một cách ...)

Trạng từ	Nghĩa
angrily	giận dữ
anxiously	lo lắng
badly	dở, tệ
beautifully	(hát/múa) hay
brightly	tươi sáng
carefully	cẩn thận
cleverly	khéo léo, khôn
colorfully	sắc sỡ
continuously	liên tiếp
easily	dễ dàng
fluently	trôi chảy
happily	hạnh phúc
heavily	nặng nè
loudly	âm ỉ, inh ỏi
nervously	hồi hộp
peacefully	hoà bình
politely	lịch sự, lễ phép
quickly	nhanh nhẹn

quietly	yên tĩnh
rapidly	nhanh
safely	an toàn
sensibly	hợp lý
seriously	nghiêm túc
silently	im lặng
skillfully	khéo tay
slowly	chậm chạp
specially	đặc biệt
stupidly	ngu ngốc
successfully	thành công
warmly	ấm áp

* LUU Y:

- fast (*nhanh*), early (*sớm*), late (*trễ*), hard (*chăm chỉ*) vừa là tính từ vừa là trạng từ.

Tính từ	Trạng từ
Jack is a very fast runner.	Jack can run very fast.
Ann is a hard worker.	Ann works hard.
The train was late.	I got up late this morning.

- Phân biệt:

late (trễ)

You come home late today.

(*Hôm nay con về trễ.*)

hard (chăm chỉ)

I've worked very hard.

(*Tôi làm việc rất chăm.*)

lately (gần đây) (= recently)

He hasn't been to the cinema lately.

(*Gần đây anh ta không đi xem phim.*)

hardly (hầu như không)

She's hardly got any money left.

(*Cô ấy hầu như không còn tiền.*)

- Một số tính từ tận cùng -LY: friendly (*thân thiện*), lovely (*dễ thương*), lively (*sống động*), ugly (*xấu xí*), silly (*ngờ ngẩn*). Những từ này không phải là trạng từ, nên ta dùng “in a/an.....way/manner” thay cho trạng từ.

Eg: She spoke to me in a friendly way/manner.

1.2. Trạng từ chỉ thời gian (adverb of time):

Cho biết sự việc xảy ra lúc nào để trả lời cho câu hỏi *when?*

now	tomorrow	still	finally
today	last year	no longer	recently
yesterday	then	already	lately
immediately	just	soon	at once
2 months later/after			

Eg: I'm leaving for Hanoi tomorrow.



1.3. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn (adverb of place):

Cho biết sự việc xảy ra ở đâu để trả lời cho câu hỏi *where?*

here	there	somewhere	outside
inside	upstairs	downstairs	everywhere
in Paris	at the supermarket		

Eg: Tom is standing there.

1.4. Trạng từ chỉ sự thường xuyên (adverb of frequency):

Cho biết hành động xảy ra thường xuyên như thế nào để trả lời cho câu hỏi *how often?*

never	rarely	seldom	sometimes
usually	frequently	occasionally	often
always	once/twice a week	every day	daily
weekly	monthly		

Eg: I often get up at 5 in the morning.

1.5. Trạng từ chỉ mức độ (adverb of degree):

Cho biết hành động, tính chất của sự việc diễn ra đến mức nào.

very	too	so	quite
rather	extremely	absolutely	terribly
completely	really	pretty	fairly
entirely	hardly	scarcely	somewhat
enough			

Eg: I come here quite often.

2) Vị trí của trạng từ:

2.1. Đầu câu:

Eg: Where are you going?



2.2. Giữa câu:

2.2.1. Trước động từ thường:

Eg: They often play football after class.

2.2.2. Sau động từ to be, trợ động từ hoặc động từ khiếm khuyết:

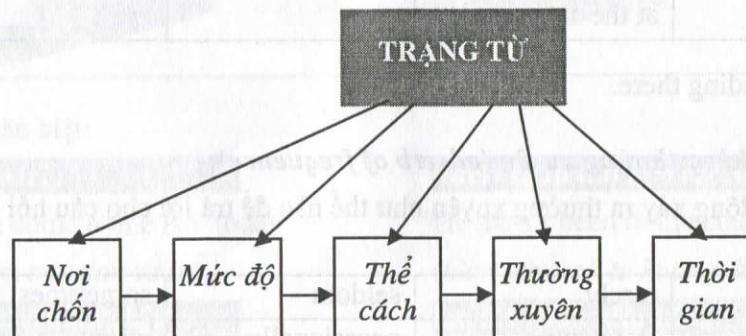
Eg: Our teacher is still sick.

2.3. Cuối câu:

Eg: You sang that song well.

3) Trật tự của các trạng từ:

Trật tự của các trạng từ trong câu thường như sau:



Eg: He walked to the church very slowly twice last Sunday.

Chú ý:

Trật tự trên có thể thay đổi tùy vào mục đích nhấn mạnh của người nói/viết.

4) Chức năng cơ bản của trạng từ:

Bản nghĩa cho

1) Động từ:

They danced beautifully.

2) Tính từ:

She is very lovely.

3) Trạng từ khác:

He studied extremely hard.

4) Cả câu:

Fortunately, he was not injured in that accident.

BÀI TẬP

1. What kind of adverb is each of the following? (Adverb of manner, Adverb of frequency, Adverb of time, Adverb of place, Adverb of degree)

Eg: now → adverb of time

- | | |
|---------------|-------|
| 1. Politely | |
| 2. Sometimes | |
| 3. Everywhere | |
| 4. Very | |
| 5. Angrily | |
| 6. Home | |
| 7. Hard | |
| 8. Quite | |
| 9. Late | |
| 10. Usually | |

2. Write the adverb from these adjectives:

Eg. Quick → quickly

- | | |
|--------------|-------|
| 1. Gentle | |
| 2. Angry | |
| 3. Sincere | |
| 4. Beautiful | |
| 5. Sensible | |
| 6. True | |
| 7. Happy | |
| 8. Immediate | |
| 9. Legible | |
| 10. Simple | |
| 11. Easy | |
| 12. Careful | |

IV. MẠO TỪ (QUÁN TỪ)



- ❖ Cách dùng quán từ không xác định "a" và "an"
- ❖ Dùng "a", "an"
- ❖ Cách dùng quán từ xác định "The"

1. Cách dùng quán từ không xác định "a" và "an"

Dùng **a** hoặc **an** trước một danh từ số ít đếm được và dùng để chỉ một người hoặc vật lần đầu được đề cập đến.

Eg: I saw a boy in the street. (Chúng ta không biết cậu bé nào, chưa được đề cập ở trước.)

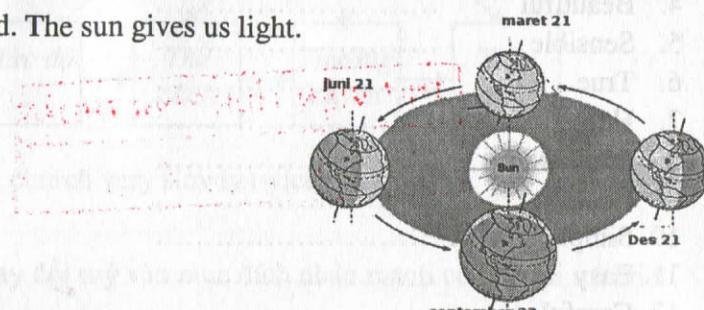
2. Dùng "a", "an" khi:

- Dùng **a** trước các từ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm.
- Mạo từ **an** được dùng trước từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm (trong cách phát âm, chứ không phải trong cách viết). Bao gồm:
 - ✓ Các từ bắt đầu bằng các nguyên âm a, e, i, u, o: an aircraft, an empty glass, an object.
 - ✓ Một số từ bắt đầu bằng u, y: an uncle, an umbrella.
 - ✓ Một số từ bắt đầu bằng h cầm: an heir, haft an hour.
 - ✓ Các từ mở đầu bằng một chữ viết tắt: an S.O.S/ an M.P.

3. Cách dùng quán từ xác định "The"

Dùng **the** trước một danh từ đã được xác định cụ thể về mặt tính chất, đặc điểm, vị trí đã được đề cập đến trước đó, hoặc những khái niệm phổ thông.

Eg: The earth is round. The sun gives us light.



Bảng dùng *the* và không dùng *the* trong một số trường hợp điển hình

Dùng <i>the</i>	Không dùng <i>the</i>
+ Dùng trước tên các đại dương, sông ngòi, biển, vịnh và các cụm hồ (số nhiều) The Red Sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the Persian Gulf, the Great Lakes	+ Trước tên một hồ: Lake Geneva
+ Trước tên các dãy núi: The Rocky Mountains	+ Trước tên một ngọn núi: Mount Vesuvius
+ Trước tên những vật thể duy nhất trong vũ trụ hoặc trên thế giới: The earth, the moon	+ Trước tên các hành tinh hoặc các chòm sao: Venus, Mars
+ The schools, colleges, universities + of + danh từ riêng The University of Florida	+ Trước tên các trường này nếu trước nó là một tên riêng: Stetson University
+ The + số thứ tự + danh từ The third chapter.	+ Trước các danh từ đi cùng số đếm: Chapter three
+ Trước tên các nước có hai từ trở lên (trừ Great Britain): The United States	+ Trước tên các nước chỉ có một từ: China, France, Venezuela, Vietnam
+ Trước tên các nước được coi là một quần đảo hoặc một quần đảo: The Philippines, The Virgin Islands, The Hawaii	+ Trước tên các nước mở đầu bằng New, hoặc một tính từ chỉ hướng: New Zealand, North Korean, France
+ Trước tên các nhóm dân tộc thiểu số: the Indians	+ Trước tên bất kì môn thể thao nào: baseball, basketball
	+ Trước các danh từ trừu tượng (trừ một số trường hợp đặc biệt).
	+ Trước tên các môn học nói chung Eg: mathematics
	+ Trước tên các ngày lễ, Tết: Christmas, Thanksgiving



BÀI TẬP

A. In the following sentences supply the articles (a, an, or the) if they are necessary. If no article is needed, leave the space blank.

1. Jason's father bought him.....bicycle that he had wanted for his birthday.
2.Statue of Liberty was a gift of friendship from France to.....United States.
3. Rita is studying.....English and.....math this semester.
4. Please give mecup ofcoffee with.....cream andsugar.
5.big books on.....table are for my history class.
6. When you go tostore, please buy.....bottle of.....chocolate milk and.....dozen oranges.
7. John and Mary went to.....school yesterday and then studied in.....library before returning home.
8. There are only.....few seats left for.....tonight's musical at.....university.
9.Lake Erie is one of.....five Great Lakes in.....North America.
10. What did you eat for.....breakfast this morning?
11. Louie played.....basketball and.....baseball at.....Boy's Club this year.
12. Rita plays.....violin and her sister plays.....guitar.
13. David attended.....Princeton University.
14. Harry has been admitted to.....School of Medicine at.....Midwestern university.
15. Phil can't go to.....movies tonight because he has to writeessay.
16. Last night there wassinging outside my house.
17.chair which you are sitting in is broken.
18.Florida State University is smaller than.....University of Florida.
19. Scientists sent.....expedition to.....Mars during.....1990s.

20. Mel's grandmother is in.....hospital, so we went to visit her.....last night.
21. I'm on night duty. When you go tobed, I go towork.
22. Sorry, I can't find the number. I remember writing it onback of an envelop.
23.gold is perhapsmost highly treasured metal.
24.Mekong River islongest river inVietnam.
25.winter is usually cold, butwinter of this year is warm.
26.money you gave me is not enough to buybicycle.
27. Look atsun. It is rising.
28. We watch television afterdinner.
29. Mr. Brown boughtnew carlast week.
30. He usually travels toPhiladelphia bytrain.
31. Miss Linda speaks.....Chinese very well although she is from.....UK.
32.swimming isgood sport.
33. Please opendoor.
34.United States isworld's biggest consumer of energy.
35. Peter likes to play.....volleyball, but he is notgood player.
36. My daughter is learning to playviolin atschool.
37. I told Mom we would be.....home inhour or so.
38. You can seemoon insky atnight.
39.her children play instreet all day.
40.blue iscolor I like.
41.January isfirst month of the year.
42. You frequently see this kind of violence ontelevision.
43.AIDS isincurable disease.
44. Not everyone believes thattechnology has improvedquality of people's lives.
45. Sue works asteacher inschool forblind in Ireland.school has over a thousand pupils.

46. Would you show meshortest way toairport?
47. He went toEngland and boughthouse inLondon.
48. He understandsFrench, but he speaks it badly.

B. Choose the best answer to complete each sentence.

1. It is estimated that about 640 women remain illiterate in world, mostly in developing countries.
A. a B. an C. the D. X
2. Did you read book I lent you last week.
A. a / the B. the / the C. the / X D. X / X
3. I went by train to West of England.
A. X / a B. X / the C. X / X D. the / the
4. We visited Canada and United States.
A. an B. a C. X D. the
5. I fell inlove with him because of his kind nature.
A. a B. the C. X D. an
6. schooling is compulsory in Australia betweenages of six and seventeen.
A. The / X B. A / an C. X / the D. The / an
7. Inmost social situations,informality is appreciated.
A. X / X B. the / an C. a / the D. the / a
8.love isvery strong feeling of affection towards someone who you are romantically attracted to.
A. The / the B. The / X C. A / the D. X / a
9. London is of England.
A. a capital B. capital C. one capital D. the capital
10. Do you know exactlynumber of Siberian tigers in China?
A. a B. an C. the D. X
11. It is estimated that only 1,000 pandas remain inwild.
A. a B. an C. the D. X
12. friend in need is friend indeed.
A. The/ the B. A/ a C. X/ X D. X/ the

13. What is yourbiggest dream inlife?
A. X / X B. the/ a C. the/ the D. a/ the
14. Did you havegood time at the party last night?
A. a B. an C. the D. X
15. The local authorities are conductingcampaign to helpdisabled.
A. a/ the B. the/ X C. X/ X D. X/ the
16.the most important thing when you take part in any examination is to be calm.
A. A B. An C. The D. X
17. Most British people are fond offootball.
A. a B. an C. the D. X
18. Every year, thousands of tourists visit Nile River.
A. a B. an C. the D. X

V. GIỚI TỪ

- ❖ Phân loại giới từ
- ❖ Giới từ theo sau tính từ
- ❖ Giới từ theo sau động từ

1) Phân loại giới từ:

1.1 Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn: IN, ON, AT

a) IN (trong): được dùng

- Chỉ một người hoặc vật ở trong một nơi nào đó.

in a box / room / building / park / garden / bag / pocket / kitchen / cinema / restaurant / book / lesson / newspaper / picture / pool / sea / river / water / sky / world / queue / row / line...

Eg: My mother is cooking in the kitchen.



- Với phương tiện xe hơi, taxi hoặc đường phố.

in a car / taxi, in/on the street

Eg: They live in Hung Vuong Street.

Peter arrived at the party in a taxi.



- Với danh từ không có mạo từ để diễn tả một người đang ở tại đó.

in bed / hospital / prison

Eg: Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still in bed.



- Trước các đất nước, thành phố, phương hướng.

in Vietnam / England / France / Hanoi / London / Paris / the east / west / south / north

Eg: Ho Chi Minh City is in the south of Vietnam.

- Để tạo thành cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn.

in the front/back of (a car/room/theater ...), in the middle of (the room ...)

Eg: I was in the back of the car when the accident happened.

A computer in the middle of the room.



b) ON (trên): được dùng

- Chỉ vị trí bên trên và tiếp xúc với bề mặt của một vật gì đó.

on the door / floor / wall / ceiling / river / beach / coast ...

on/in the street, on a page

Eg: I sat on the beach.

They live on Wall Street.

The picture you're looking for is on page 7.

- Với phương tiện đi lại công cộng hoặc cá nhân (xe đạp, xe máy).

on a bus/train/ship/plane/bycicle/motorbike/horse.

Eg: Mary passed me on her bycicle.

There were too many people on the bus.



– *Để tạo thành cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn.*

on the right / left, on horseback, on the way to (school...)

on the back/front of (the envelope/paper...)

on top of (the wardrobe...)

on/at the corner of a street

Eg: In Britain people drive on the left.

Write your name on the front of the envelope.

c) AT (ở): được dùng

– *Để diễn tả một vị trí được xác định trong không gian hoặc số nhà.*

at the door / bus stop / traffic lights / party / meeting / desk ..., at 69 Tran Hung Dao Street

Eg: Someone is standing at the door.

She lives at 69 Tran Hung Dao Street.

– *Để tạo thành cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn.*

at home / school / college / university / work ...

at the top/bottom of (the page ...)

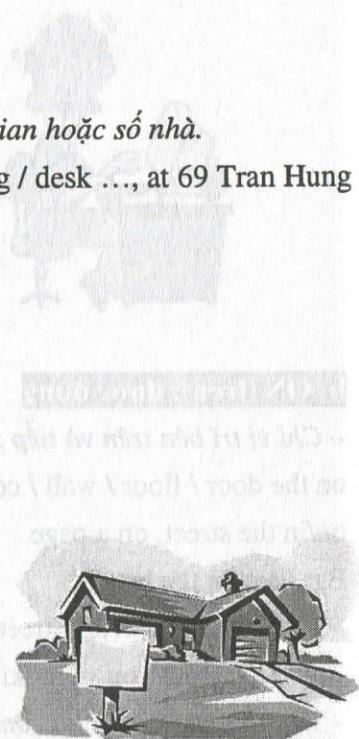
at the end of (the street ...)

at the front/back of (the line ...)

at/on the corner of the street

Eg: The garden is at the back of the building.

Peter's house is at the end of the street.



1.2. Giới từ chỉ thời gian: IN, ON, AT

a) IN: được dùng:

– *Để chỉ buổi trong ngày nói chung, tháng, năm, mùa, thập niên, thế kỷ, thiên niên kỷ.*

in the morning / afternoon / evening.

in February, in 1999.

in (the) spring / summer / autumn / winter.

in the 1990s, in the 21st century, in the 3rd millennium.

– Trong một số cụm từ để chỉ một khoảng thời gian trong tương lai.

in a few minutes, in an hour, in a day / week / month ...

Eg: Daisy has gone away. She'll be back in a week.

(Daisy đã đi khỏi. Cô ấy sẽ trở về trong một tuần.)

– Trong cụm từ *in the end* với nghĩa cuối cùng (finally, at last), *in time* với nghĩa kịp lúc.

Eg: Peter got very angry. In the end, he walked out of the room.

(Peter rất giận. Cuối cùng, nó ra khỏi phòng.)

Will you be home in time for dinner?

(Bạn sẽ về nhà kịp giờ ăn tối?)

b) ON: được dùng

– *Để chỉ thứ trong tuần, ngày trong tháng.*

on Monday, on 5th March, on this/that day

Eg: I was born on 27th June, 1983.

– *Để chỉ buổi trong ngày cụ thể hoặc một ngày cụ thể.*

on Friday morning/ Christmas Day/ New Year's Day/ my birthday

Eg: See you on Friday morning.

c) AT: được dùng

– *Để chỉ thời gian, các bữa ăn trong ngày.*

at 5 a.m., at sunrise/ sunset/ dawn / noon/ twilight/ night / midnight/ at breakfast/ lunch / dinner/ supper.

Eg: I get up at 5 o'clock every morning.

– Để chỉ một dịp lễ hội, một thời khắc nào đó.

at/on the weekend, at Christmas / Easter

at present / the moment / the same time / this (that) time

Eg: Mr. Brown is busy at the moment.

– Để tạo thành các cụm giới từ.

at the end/beginning of, at the age of, at first/last

Eg: He came to live in London at the age of 25.

LUU Ý:

KHÔNG dùng IN, ON, AT trước all, every, this month/year, next, last, tomorrow, yesterday, today.

Eg: I hope to see you next Friday. (on next Friday)

He has worked hard all morning. (in all morning)



Các giới từ chỉ thời gian khác:

❖ FROM ... TO/UNTIL/TILL (từ ... đến) (= BETWEEN ... AND)

Eg: Every morning he plays tennis from 6 to 7.

(Every morning he plays tennis between 6 and 7.)

❖ SINCE (từ khi - mốc thời gian)

Eg: I've been waiting for her since 5 p.m.

❖ FOR (khoảng)

Eg: He has lived in Paris for three months.

❖ DURING (trong suốt)

Eg: You have to be quiet during the performance.

❖ UNTIL/TILL (cho tới khi)

Eg: She'll be here until Thursday.

❖ BY (vào khoảng - trước hoặc đến một thời điểm nào đó)

Eg: You must be home by 9.

❖ BEFORE (trước lúc)/ AFTER (sau khi)

Eg: Come and see me before / after lunch.

2) Giới từ theo sau tính từ:

1.1 Adj + TO

acceptable:	có thể chấp nhận
accustomed:	quen
agreeable:	có thể đồng ý
applicable:	có thể ứng dụng
appropriate:	thích hợp
contrary:	trái với
dedicated:	hiến dâng
essential:	cần thiết
friendly (to/with):	thân thiện
generous:	hào phóng
harmful:	có hại
important:	quan trọng
kind:	tử tế
known:	được biết đến
likely:	có khả năng/có thể thích hợp
loyal:	trung thành
lucky:	may mắn
married:	kết hôn
open:	mở
pleasant:	vui
pleasing:	làm vui lòng
polite:	lịch sự
preferable:	thích hơn
related:	liên quan
rude:	thô lỗ
similar:	giống
strange:	xa lạ
subject:	dễ bị, khó tránh
true:	trung thành

1.2 Adj + OF

afraid:	sợ
aware:	ý thức
boastful:	kho khoe
capable:	có khả năng
careful (of/with/about):	cẩn thận
careless:	bất cẩn
certain:	chắc chắn
confident:	tự tin
desirous:	khao khát
fond:	thích
forgetful:	quên
full:	đầy
glad:	vui mừng
innocent:	vô tội
jealous:	ghen tị
proud:	tự hào
sure (of/about):	chắc chắn
thoughtful:	chu đáo, ân cần
thoughtless:	không chu đáo, ân cần
tolerant:	khoan dung
worthy:	xứng đáng

1.3 Adj + FOR

anxious(for/about):	lo âu
appropriate:	thích hợp
available:	có thể dùng được
difficult:	khó
eager:	háo hức, hăm hở
enough:	đủ
famous:	nổi tiếng

good (for health/so):	tốt
grateful (for s.th.):	biết ơn
late:	trễ
necessary:	cần thiết
perfect:	hoàn hảo
responsible:	có trách nhiệm
sorry:	lấy làm thương hại
sufficient:	đầy đủ
suitable (for/to):	thích hợp
useful:	có lợi ích

1.4 Adj + AT

amazed (at/by):	ngạc nhiên
angry (at/with s.o./to s.th.):	giận giữ
annoyed (at/by):	bực mình
astonished (at/by):	ngạc nhiên
bad (at s.th.):	dở
clever:	thông minh
excellent:	xuất sắc
good (at st):	giỏi
hopeless:	vô vọng
present:	có mặt
quick:	nhanh
skilful:	có năng khiếu

1.5 Adj + WITH

acquainted:	quen
annoyed:	giận
bored/ fed up:	chán
covered:	bao phủ
crowded:	đông

disappointed:	thất vọng
pleased:	hài lòng
popular:	nổi tiếng
satisfied:	thoả mãn

1.6 Adj + IN

honest:	thoả mãn
interested:	thích thú
proficient (at/in):	thành thạo
rich:	giàu
successful:	thành công
weak:	yếu kém

1.7 Adj + FROM

absent:	vắng
different:	khác
distinct:	khác biệt
free:	được miễn
safe:	an toàn
separate:	riêng lẻ

1.8 Adj + ABOUT

confused:	bối rối
curious:	tò mò, hiếu kỳ
enthusiastic:	nhiệt tình
excited:	hứng thú
happy:	vui vẻ
sad:	buồn
serious:	đứng đắn, nghiêm túc
worried:	bồn chồn, lo lắng

3) Giới từ theo sau động từ:

accuse ... of:	buộc tội
apologize to ... for:	xin lỗi
apologize for:	xin lỗi về
apply for:	nộp đơn xin việc
arrive in/at:	đến (nơi)
ask ... for:	yêu cầu... về/xin... về
believe in:	tin tưởng vào
belong to:	thuộc về
blame ... for:	đổ lỗi
borrow ... from:	mượn
care about:	quan tâm về
care for:	chăm sóc/thích/yêu cầu
charge ... with:	phạt
come across:	tình cờ gặp
complain to ... about:	than phiền
concentrate on:	tập trung
congratulate ... on:	chúc mừng
consist of:	bao gồm
crash into:	va chạm vào
deal with:	giải quyết
decide on:	quyết định về
depend on:	thuộc vào
die of:	chết vì
divide into:	chia (ra)
dream of / about:	mơ về
escape from:	thoát khỏi
explain ... to:	giải thích
feel like:	cảm thấy như
happen to:	xảy đến
hear about/from/of:	nghe về
hope for:	hi vọng về

insist on:	khăng khăng
invite ... to:	mời
laugh/smile at:	cười vào
leave ... for:	rời... để đến
listen to:	nghe
live on:	sống nhờ vào
look after:	chăm sóc
look around:	nhìn quanh
look at:	nhìn
look back on:	nhìn về quá khứ
look down on:	khinh rẻ
look for:	tìm
look forward to:	mong đợi
look into:	điều tra
object to:	phản đối
participate in:	tham gia vào
pay for:	trả tiền cho
point / aim at:	chỉ vào
prefer ... to:	thích ... hơn
prepare for:	chuẩn bị
provide ... with:	cung cấp
regard ... as:	coi ... như
rely ... on:	dựa vào
remind ... of:	nhắc nhở
result from:	do bởi
result in:	gây ra
run into:	tình cờ gặp
search for:	tìm kiếm
send for:	cho mời (ai) đến
shout at:	la, hét
speak/talk to:	nói với

spend ... on:	chi tiêu ... cho
succeed in:	thành công về
suffer from:	đau, chịu đựng
take after:	giống
think about / of:	nghó về
throw ... at:	ném ... vào
translate ... from ... into:	dịch...từ...sang
wait for:	chờ
warn ... about:	cảnh báo ... về
write to:	viết thư cho

* LUU Ý: Giới từ đi với GO

go after:	đuổi theo, theo sau
go ahead:	tiến hành, thẳng tiến
go along:	tiến triển
go away:	đi khỏi
go back:	trở về
go by:	(thời gian) trôi qua
go down:	(giá cả) giảm (# go up)
go off:	cháy, nổ
go on:	xảy ra, diễn ra, tiếp tục
go out:	tắt, bị dập tắt
go over:	xem xét, kiểm tra kỹ
go with:	hợp với

4) V + N + Giới từ:

catch sight of:	thoáng thấy
give place to:	dành chỗ cho
give way to:	nhượng bộ
keep pace with:	theo kịp
lose sight of:	mất hút

lose touch with:	mất liên lạc với
lose track of:	quên mất
make room for:	nhường chỗ cho
make use of:	sử dụng, tận dụng
pay attention to:	chú ý đến
put a stop to:	chấm dứt
put an end to:	chấm dứt
set fire to:	làm cháy, đốt
take account of:	tính đến
take advantage of:	lợi dụng, tận dụng
take care of:	chăm sóc
take note of:	ghi chú, ghi nhận
take notice of:	lưu ý, để ý

BÀI TẬP

A. Put in the correct prepositions.

1. We give each other presents Christmas.
2. Don't sit the floor.
3. I'm going away the end of January.
4. I met Tom the street yesterday.
5. They sent me a cheque \$ 50.
6. There has been some decrease military spending this year.
7. Nobody knows what the cause the explosion was.
8. Do you think we'll find a solution this problem?
9. Have you ever read any books Mark Twain?
10. It's unreasonable you to expect her to love you at first sight.
11. They were furious me not inviting them to the party.
12. Were you disappointed your Examination results?
13. Everybody was shocked the news.
14. She is scared going out alone.
15. I'm not ashamed what I did.
16. My sister won't have dinner 11.30 p.m.
17. She is engaged an American.
18. Who was responsible all the noise last night?
19. Your writing is similar mine.
20. Ann wasn't keen going out in the rain.
21. The city centre was crowded tourists.
22. I always try my best to get along other officers.
23. Why don't you apply a position in that company?
24. He is very selfish. He doesn't care other people.
25. Don't look out of the window. Concentrate your work!
26. He lost control of the car and crashed a wall.
27. He was the sort of person that you could depend
28. Did you hear the fight in the club on Saturday night?

29. She's very old. She needs someone to look her.

30. He often dreams travelling to America.

31. I didn't have enough money to pay the meal.

32. He has suffered lung cancer for ages.

33. He shouted from the other side of the street.

34. The police are searching the escaped prisoner.

35. That's a good idea. Why didn't I think that?

B. Choose the correct prepositions.

1. We all know how wonderful you are. There's no need to show

- A. up B. off C. down D. forward

2. I arranged to meet Jim after work last night but he didn't turn

- A. off B. up C. on D. down

3. Be careful on that horse. Don't fall

- A. into B. against C. behind D. off

4. A stone fell on my head and knocked me I was unconscious for half an hour

- A. with B. up C. off D. out

5. There was a \$20 note lying on the pavement, so I picked it

- A. in B. at C. up D. below

6. I saw a jacket which I liked in the shop, so I went in and tried it to see if it fitted me.

- A. on B. through C. away D. back

7. Sorry I'm late. The car broke on the way here.

- A. over B. about C. down D. round

8. "What shall I do with these old newspapers?" "Throw them"

- A. away B. along C. off D. down

9. Everybody has been warned the dangers of smoking.

- A. into B. against C. to D. from

10. He was found guilty and sentenced six months' imprisonment.

- A. about B. of C. to D. back

11. I've always regarded you one of my best friends.

- A. as B. like C. up D. with

12. He put suntan oil on his body to protect his skin the sun.

- A. through B. from C. with D. off

13. I prefer tea coffee.

- A. about B. from C. to D. in

14. This house reminds me the one I lived in when I was a child.

- A. about B. to C. against D. of

15. Three students were accused cheating in the Examination.

- A. on B. off C. with D. of

16. I wrote to the company to ask them more information about the job.

- A. for B. in C. along D. forward

17. Three men have been arrested and charged robbery.

- A. into B. with C. about D. up

18. When I heard he had passed his Examination, I phoned him to congratulate him his success.

- A. back B. over C. on D. with

19. Cut the meat small pieces before frying it.

- A. into B. off C. about D. along

20. I haven't seen her since she left home work this morning.

- A. from B. since C. during D. for

21. I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting the rain to stop.

- A. for B. away C. from D. up

22. Sorry I haven't written you for such a long time.

- A. to B. into C. for D. round

23. Who was that man I saw you talking in the pub?

- A. up B. back C. from D. to

24. What happened the gold watch you used to have?

- A. with B. against C. for D. to

25. I look stupid with this haircut. Everyone will laugh me.

- A. in B. at C. into D. away

26. George's salary is very low. It isn't enough to live

- A. about B. round C. on D. down

27. I've lost my keys. Can you help me look them?

- A. up B. after C. for D. into

28. I believesaying what I think.
- A. on B. in C. with D. for
29. When I realized I was wrong, I apologized to himmy mistake.
- A. at B. for C. up D. before
30. Would you carea cup of coffee?
- A. for B. about C. of D. with
31. There was an accident this morning. A bus collideda car.
- A. from B. with C. onto D. at
32. In the dark, I bumpedthe chair.
- A. into B. about C. down D. after
33. We had an enormous meal. It consistedseven courses.
- A. off B. of C. in D. up
34. He diedhis beliefs.
- A. for B. of C. up D. down
35. I feel sorry Bob. He has no friends and no money.
- A. with B. about C. for D. by
36. I'm sorrythe noise last night. We're having a party.
- A. with B. about C. for D. by
37. I wasn't very impressedthe film.
- A. back B. up C. by D. through
38. I'm sure you are capablepassing the Examination.
- A. round B. along C. among D. of
39. Are you interestedart and architecture.
- A. from B. for C. up D. in
40. Mary is very fondanimals. She has three cats and two dogs.
- A. about B. since C. of D. between
41. The letter I wrote was fullmistakes.
- A. with B. about C. of D. out
42. I'm a bit shortmoney. Can you lend me some?
- A. at B. over C. of D. down
43. I was amazedher knowledge of French Literature.
- A. by B. about C. of D. off

44. He is excellentplaying the flute.
- A. at B. over C. to D. behind
45. Why are you always so jealousother people?
- A. on B. of C. in D. below
46. He was proudhimself for not giving up.
- A. of B. during C. after D. under
47. Are you excitedgoing on holiday next week?
- A. into B. about C. above D. over
48. You get fed updoing the same thing every day.
- A. between B. up C. against D. with
49. I'm really satisfiedwhat I have.
- A. with B. along C. back D. out
50. It's sillyyou to go out without a coat. You'll catch cold.
- A. to B. of C. since D. by
51. She was furious with menot attending her birthday party.
- A. for B. about C. at D. on
52. Why were you cruelAnn?
- A. to B. of C. under D. up
53. We metaccident at the airport.
- A. in B. into C. at D. by
54. Have you ever beenlove with anyone?
- A. with B. to C. back D. in
55. Look! That car isfire.
- A. at B. on C. against D. above
56. Tom has gone to Franceholiday.
- A. on B. over C. for D. down
57. Do you know any songsthe Beatles?
- A. with B. for C. by D. at
58. There is a close relationshipthem.
- A. towards B. between C. to D. above
59. His attitudethe job is very negative.
- A. up B. towards C. down D. out

60. I was surprised at his reactionwhat I said.
A. to B. between C. about D. on
61. The train was late but no one knew the reasonthe delay.
A. in B. at C. for D. off
62. There is an increaseinflation in our country.
A. on B. up C. in D. under
63. The advantageliving alone is that you can do what you like.
A. of B. upon C. at D. from
64. The accident was fault, so I paid for the damagethe other car.
A. to B. along C. into D. between
65. The bus was late this morning, which is unusual. It's usuallytime.
A. in B. on C. with D. among
66. His illness got worse and worse.the end, he had got into hospital for an operation.
A. For B. By C. At D. In
67. Did you come herecar or on foot?
A. on B. by C. in D. into
68. The taxi stopped. He gotit and entered the house.
A. by B. on C. into D. out of
69. When the train arrived at Bristol, passengers in turn gotit.
A. off B. by C. out D. into
70. What time did you arrivethe station?
A. in B. at C. on D. to
71. Many people are sentprison for crimes that they didn't commit.
A. at B. in C. to D. down
72. I think I'd like to worka farm.
A. in B. on C. above D. under
73. We stoppeda pretty village on the way to London.
A. below B. in C. towards D. at
74. It was a lovely day. There wasn't a cloudthe sky.
A. at B. above C. from D. in
75. It can be dangerous when children play footballthe street.
A. on B. at C. in D. for
76. Tell meFriday whether or not you can come to the party.
A. by B. until C. till D. in
77. I was tired this morning, so I stayed in bedhalf past ten.
A. by B. at C. until D. for
78. Ann is going awaya week in September.
A. for B. since C. as D. like
79. Robert suddenly began to feel illthe Examination.
A. out B. during C. up D. about
80. It soundsa baby crying.
A. since B. as C. like D. to
81. Your sister is very kindme.
A. to B. at C. with D. about
82. The boys are tireddoing exercises every night.
A. with B. at C. by D. of
83. He took his girl friendto dinnerher birthday.
A. off / on B. out / to C. with / on D. out / on
84. Drug addiction is a growing problem particularlyyoung people.
A. between B. among C. behind D. inside
85. She has always been very niceme.
A. of B. to C. with D. about
86. She still can't getthe shock for her baby's death.
A. out B. on C. over D. away
87. I apologizedBridgetthe misunderstanding.
A. for / on B. to / for C. with / for D. of / of
88. He will not be comingthe meeting because he has too many papers to grade.
A. to B. two C. too D. in
89. Do you wash your hands all the time because you are afraidgerms?
A. in B. of C. about D. for
90. We are sure to pass the exam. We feel sureit.
A. to B. for C. in D. of
91. We can describe someone who is fondsport as sporty.
A. of B. in C. on D. with

92. They talked to each other when they were the trains.
A. in B. on C. by D. out of

93. Thank you very much your presence.
A. after B. about C. with D. for

94. How would you respond "Thank you very much."?
A. at B. in C. on D. to

95. A soldier has to learn to carry orders as soon as they are given.
A. out B. on C. to D. by

96. They were playing football 4 p.m. to 6 p.m. yesterday.
A. from B. within C. between D. out of

97. David was unemployed so he was financially dependent his wife.
A. on B. to C. of D. from

98. She suffers bad headaches.
A. in B. about C. from D. of

99. When they failed to pay their bill, the authorities decided to cut the gas supply to the flat.
A. down B. out C. across D. off

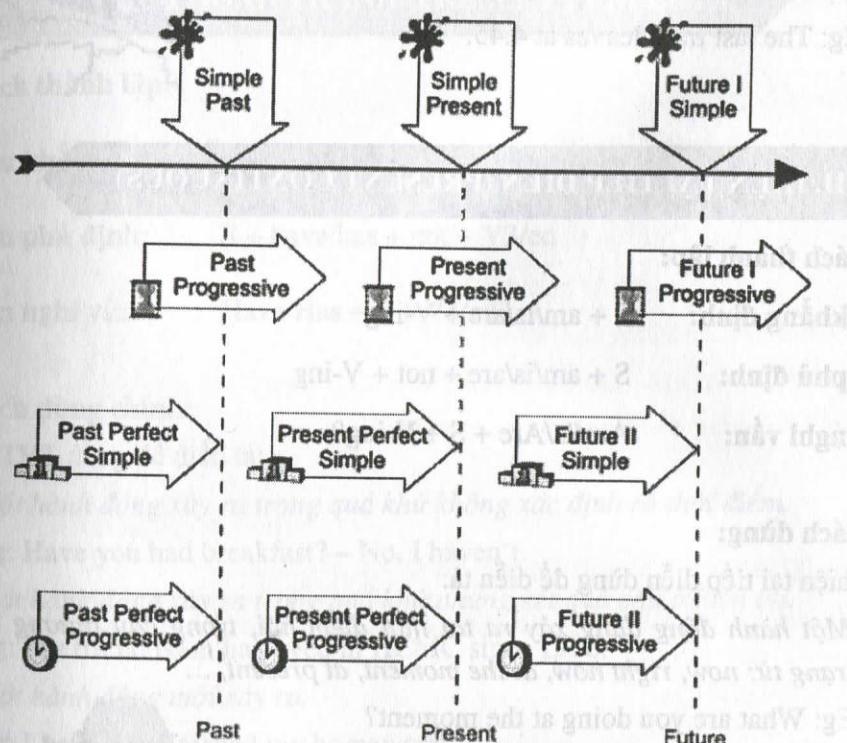
100. He was so drunken that he wasn't capable driving himself home.
A. to B. for C. of D. from

UNIT 2

TENSES

CÁC THÌ CƠ BẢN

LÝ THUYẾT



I. HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN (SIMPLE PRESENT)

1) Cách thành lập:

- **Câu khẳng định:** S + V(s/es); S + am/is/are
 - **Câu phủ định:** S + do/does + not + V; S + am/is/are + not
 - **Câu nghi vấn:** Do/Does + S + V?; Am/Is/Are + S?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì hiện tại đơn diễn tả:

2.1 Một thói quen hoặc một hành động lặp đi lặp lại. Trong câu thường có các trạng từ: always, often, usually, sometimes, seldom, rarely, every day / week/ month ...

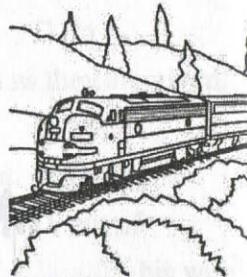
Eg: Mary often gets up early in the morning.

2.2 Một sự thật hiển nhiên, một chân lí.

Eg: The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

2.3 Một thời gian biểu hoặc một lịch trình.

Eg: The last train leaves at 4.45.



II. HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN (PRESENT CONTINUOUS)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + am/is/are + V-ing

- Câu phủ định: S + am/is/are + not + V-ing

- Câu nghi vấn: Am/Is/Are + S + V-ing?

2) Cách dùng:

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn dùng để diễn tả:

2.1 Một hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói, trong câu thường có các trạng từ: now, right now, at the moment, at present, ...

Eg: What are you doing at the moment?

Be quiet! My mother is sleeping.

I'm writing a letter.



2.2 Một hành động đã được lên kế hoạch từ trước.

Eg: What are you doing tonight?

I am going to the cinema with my father.

2.3 Một hành động nhất thời (dùng để chỉ sự thay đổi) today, this week, this month, these days, ...

Eg: What is your daughter doing these days?

She is studying English at the foreign language center.

3) Những động từ không dùng với thì HTTD:

3.1 Động từ chỉ giác quan: hear, see, smell, taste

3.2 Động từ chỉ cảm xúc: love, hate, like, dislike, want, wish

3.3 Động từ chỉ trạng thái hay sự sở hữu: look, seem, appear, have, own, belong to, need, ...

3.4 Động từ chỉ hoạt động trí tuệ: agree, understand, remember, know, ...

III. HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH (PRESENT PERFECT)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + have/has+ V3/ed

- Câu phủ định: S + have/has + not + V3/ed

- Câu nghi vấn: Have/Has + S + V3/ed?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì HTHT dùng để diễn tả:

2.1 Một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ không xác định rõ thời điểm.

Eg: Have you had breakfast? – No, I haven't.

2.2 Một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả còn ở hiện tại.

Eg: My friend Nam has lived in HCMC since 1998.

2.3 Một hành động mới xảy ra.

Eg: I have just finished my homework.

2.4 Trong câu trúc:

Be + the first/second... time + S + have/has + V3/ed

Be + the so sánh nhất + N + S + have/has + V3/ed

Eg: This is the first time I have been to Paris.

She is the most honest person I have ever met.

3) Các trạng ngữ thường dùng với thì HTHT:

Just, recently/lately, ever, never, yet, already, since, for, so far/until now/up to now/up to the present

IV. HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN (PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + have/has+ been + V-ing
- Câu phủ định: S + have/has + not + been + V-ing
- Câu nghi vấn: Have/Has + S + been + V-ing?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì HTHTTD được dùng để diễn tả

Hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ và kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp diễn ở tương lai. Thường dùng với: How long, since và for.

Eg: How long have you been waiting for her?

I have been waiting for her for an hour.

Chú ý: HTHT thường chỉ hành động hoàn tất trong khi đó HTHTTD thường chỉ hành động còn tiếp tục



V. QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN (SIMPLE PAST)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + V2/ed; S + was/were
- Câu phủ định: S + did + not + V; S + was/were + not
- Câu nghi vấn: Did + S + V?; Was/Were + S?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Quá khứ đơn dùng để diễn tả 1 hành động xảy ra và chấm dứt hoàn toàn trong quá khứ. Trong câu thường có các trạng ngữ: yesterday, ago, last week/month/year, in the past, in 1990, ...

Eg: Uncle Ho passed away in 1969.

VI. QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN (PAST CONTINUOUS)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + was/were + V-ing
- Câu phủ định: S + was/were + not + V-ing
- Câu nghi vấn: Was/Were + S + V-ing?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì QKTD dùng để diễn tả:

2.1 Một hành động xảy ra và kéo dài tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

Eg: What were you doing from 3p.m to 6p.m yesterday?

I was practising English at that time.

She was studying her lesson at 7 last night.



2.2 Một hành động đang xảy ra (V-ing) ở quá khứ thì có một hành động khác xen vào (V2/ed).

Eg: He was sleeping when I came.

While my mother was cooking dinner, the phone rang.

2.3 Hai hành động diễn ra song song cùng lúc trong quá khứ.

Eg: While I was doing my homework, my younger brother was playing video games.



VII. QUÁ KHÚ HOÀN THÀNH (PAST PERFECT)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + had + V3/ed

- Câu phủ định: S + had + not + V3/ed

- Câu nghi vấn: Had + S + V3/ed?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì QKHT dùng để diễn tả:

2.1 Một hành động xảy ra và hoàn tất trước một thời điểm hoặc một hành động khác trong quá khứ (hành động trước dùng HAD + V3/ed, hành động sau dùng V2/ed).

Eg: We had had dinner before eight o'clock last night.

2.2 Một hành động đã xảy ra nhưng chưa hoàn thành, tính đến một thời điểm nào đó trong quá khứ.

Eg: By the time I left that school, I had taught there for ten years.

3) Thì này thường được dùng với các từ, ngữ sau đây:

- After, before, when, as, once

Eg: When I got to the station, the train had already left.

- No sooner ... than (vừa mới ... thì)

- Hardly/Scarcely ... when (vừa mới ... thì)

Eg: He had no sooner returned from abroad than he fell ill.

→ No sooner had he returned from abroad than he fell ill.

- It was not until ... that ... (mãi cho tới ... mới ...)

- Not until ... that ... (mãi cho tới ... mới ...)

Eg: It was not until I had met her that I understood the problem.

→ Not until I had met her did I understand the problem.

VIII. QUÁ KHÚ HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN

(PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + had + been + V-ing

- Câu phủ định: S + had + not + been + V-ing

- Câu nghi vấn: Had + S + been + not + V-ing?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì QKHTTD dùng để nhấn mạnh tính LIÊN TỤC của hành động cho đến khi một hành động khác xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Eg: When she arrived, I had been waiting for three hours.

IX. TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN (SIMPLE FUTURE)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + will/shall + V

- Câu phủ định: S + will/shall + not + V

- Câu nghi vấn: Will/Shall + S + V?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì tương lai đơn dùng để diễn tả:

2.1 Một hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Eg: I will call you tomorrow.

2.2 Một quyết định đưa ra vào lúc nói.

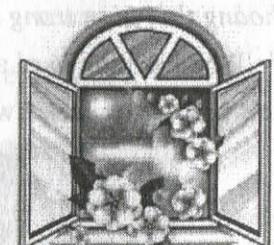
Eg: It's cold. I'll shut the window.

2.3 Một quyết tâm, lời hứa, đề nghị, yêu cầu.

Eg: I will lend you the money.

2.4 Một tiên đoán, dự báo trong tương lai.

Eg: People will travel to Mars one day.



3) Một số trạng từ chỉ thời gian thường gặp:

Tomorrow, tonight, next week/month/ year/ some day/ in the future, ...

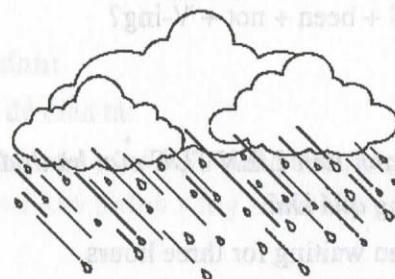
LƯU Ý: Cách dùng của *be going to + V*:

+ Diễn tả ý định (có trong kế hoạch)

Eg: I have saved some money. I am going to buy a new computer.

+ Diễn tả một dự đoán có căn cứ

Eg: Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.



X. TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN (FUTURE CONTINUOUS)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + will/shall + be + V-ing

- Câu phủ định: S + will/shall + not + be + V-ing

- Câu nghi vấn: Will/Shall + S + be + V-ing?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì *TLTD* dùng để diễn tả một hành động sẽ đang diễn ra ở một thời điểm hay một khoảng thời gian trong tương lai.

Eg: We'll be working hard all day tomorrow.

This time next week I will be playing tennis.



XI. TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH (FUTURE PERFECT)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + will/shall + have + V3/ed

- Câu phủ định: S + will/shall + not + have + V3/ed

- Câu nghi vấn: Will/Shall + S + have + V3/ed?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì tương lai hoàn thành dùng để diễn tả:

2.1 Một hành động sẽ hoàn tất trước một thời điểm trong tương lai.

Eg: It's now 7 p.m. I will have finished teaching this class by 8.30.

2.2 Một hành động sẽ hoàn tất trước một hành động khác trong tương lai.

Eg: By the time you come back, I will have written this letter.

Thì này thường được bắt đầu bằng cụm từ: By + time (By then, By the time, By the end of this week/month/year).

XII. TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN (FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS)

1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định: S + will/shall + have + been + V-ing

- Câu phủ định: S + will/shall + not + have + been + V-ing

- Câu nghi vấn: Will/Shall + S + have + been + V-ing?

2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn dùng để nhấn mạnh tính liên tục của hành động so với một thời điểm nào đó hoặc hành động khác trong tương lai.

Eg: By next month, he will have been working in the office for ten years.

When George gets his degree, he will have been studying at Oxford for four years.

BÀI TẬP

A. Use the correct form of verbs in brackets.

1. In all the world, there (be) _____ only 14 mountains that (reach) _____ above 8,000 meters.
2. He sometimes (come) _____ to see his parents.
3. When I (come) _____, she (leave) _____ for Dalat ten minutes ago.
4. My grandfather never (fly) _____ in an airplane, and he has no intention of ever doing so.
5. We just (decide) _____ that we (undertake) _____ the job.
6. He told me that he (take) _____ a trip to California the following week.
7. I knew that this road (be) _____ too narrow.
8. Right now I (attend) _____ class. Yesterday at this time I (attend) _____ class.
9. Tomorrow I'm going to leave for home. When I (arrive) _____ at the airport, Mary (wait) _____ for me.
10. Margaret was born in 1950. By the year 2005, she (live) _____ on this earth for 55 years.
11. The traffic was very heavy. By the time I (get) _____ to Mary's party, everyone already (arrive) _____.
12. I will graduate in June. I (see) _____ you in July. By the time I (see) _____ you, I (graduate) _____.
13. I (visit) _____ my uncle's home many times when I (be) _____ a child.
14. That book (lie) _____ on the table for week. You (not read) _____ it yet?
15. David (wash) _____ his hands. He just (repair) _____ the TV set.
16. You (be) _____ here before? Yes, I (spend) _____ my holidays here last year.
17. We never (meet) _____ him. We don't know what he (look) _____ like.

18. The car (be) _____ ready for him by the time he (come) _____ tomorrow.
19. On arriving at home I (find) _____ that she just (leave) _____ a few minutes before.
20. When we (arrive) _____ in London tonight, it probably (rain) _____.
21. It (rain) _____ hard. We can't do anything until it (stop) _____.
22. Last night we (watch) _____ TV when the power (fail) _____.
23. That evening we (stay) _____ up to talk about the town where he (live) _____ for some years.
24. I (sit) _____ down for a rest while the shoes (repair) _____.
25. Half way to the office Paul (turn) _____ round and (go) _____ back home because he (forget) _____ to turn the gas off.
26. London (change) _____ a lot since we first (come) _____ to live here.
27. While we (talk) _____ on the phone the children (start) _____ fighting and (break) _____ a window.
28. He used to talk to us for hours about all the interesting things he (do) _____ in his life.
29. You know she (stand) _____ looking at that picture for the last twenty minutes.
30. I (spend) _____ a lot of time travelling since I (get) _____ this new job.
31. When I (be) _____ at school we all (study) _____ Latin.
32. When I (meet) _____ him, he (work) _____ as a waiter for a year or so.
33. After he (finish) _____ breakfast he (sit) _____ down to write some letters.
34. She (have) _____ a hard life, but she's always smiling.
35. I think Jim (be) _____ out of town.

B. Choose the best answer among A, B, C, or D.

1. When I last saw him, he _____ in London.
 - A. has lived
 - B. is living
 - C. was living
 - D. has been living

2. We _____ Dorothy since last Saturday.
A. don't see
B. haven't seen
C. didn't see
3. The train _____ half an hour ago.
A. has been leaving
B. left
C. has left
4. Jack _____ the door.
A. has just painted
B. paint
C. will have painted
5. My sister _____ for you since yesterday.
A. is looking
B. was looking
C. has been looking
6. I _____ Texas State University now.
A. am attending
B. attend
C. was attending
7. He has been selling motorbikes _____.
A. ten years ago
B. since ten years
C. for ten years ago
8. Christopher Columbus _____ American more than 500 years ago.
A. discovered
B. has discovered
C. had discovered
9. He fell down when he _____ towards the church.
A. run
B. runs
C. was running
D. had run
10. We _____ there when our father died.
A. still lived
B. lived still
C. was still lived
D. were still living
11. They _____ table tennis when their father comes back home.
A. will play
B. will be playing
C. play
D. would play
12. By Christmas, I _____ for Mr. Smith for six years.
A. shall have been working
B. shall work
C. have been working
D. shall be working
13. I _____ in the room right now.
A. am being
B. was being
C. have been being
D. am
14. I _____ to New York three times this year.
A. have been
B. was
C. were
D. had been
15. I'll come and see you before I _____ for the States.
A. leave
B. will leave
C. have left
D. shall leave
16. The little girl asked what _____ to her friend.
A. has happened
B. happened
C. had happened
D. would have been happened
17. John _____ a book when I saw him.
A. is reading
B. read
C. was reading
D. reading
18. He said he _____ return later.
A. will
B. would
C. can
D. would be
19. Jack _____ the door.
A. has just opened
B. open
C. will have opened
D. opening
20. I have been waiting for you _____.
A. since early morning
B. since 9a.m
C. for two hours
D. All are correct
21. Almost everyone _____ for home by the time we arrived.
A. leave
B. left
C. leaves
D. had left
22. By the age of 25, he _____ two famous novels.
A. wrote
B. writes
C. has written
D. had written
23. While her husband was in the army, Mary _____ to him twice a week.
A. was reading
B. wrote
C. was written
D. had written

24. I couldn't cut the grass because the lawn mower _____ a few days previously.

- A. broke down
- B. has been broken
- C. had broken down
- D. breaks down

25. I have never played badminton before. This is the first time I _____ to play.

- A. try
- B. tried
- C. have tried
- D. am trying

26. Since _____, I have heard nothing from him.

- A. he had left
- B. he left
- C. he has left
- D. he was left

27. After I _____ lunch, I looked for my bag.

- A. had
- B. had had
- C. have has
- D. have had

28. By the end of next year, George _____ English for two years.

- A. will have learned
- B. will learn
- C. has learned
- D. would learn

29. The man got out of the car, _____ round to the back and opened the book.

- A. walking
- B. walked
- C. walks
- D. walk

30. Henry _____ into the restaurant when the writer was having dinner.

- A. was going
- B. went
- C. has gone
- D. did go

31. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he _____ dinner.

- A. finish
- B. finishes
- C. will finish
- D. finishing

32. I shall be glad when he _____.

- A. had gone
- B. did go
- C. went
- D. has gone

33. Ask her to come and see me when she _____ her work.

- A. finish
- B. has finished
- C. finished
- D. finishing

34. Turn off the gas. Don't you see the kettle _____?

- A. boil
- B. boils
- C. is boiling
- D. boiled

35. Tom and Mary _____ for Vietnam tomorrow.

- A. leave
- B. are leaving
- C. leaving
- D. are left

36. He always _____ for a walk in the evening.

- A. go
- B. is going
- C. goes
- D. going

37. Her brother _____ in Canada at present.

- A. working
- B. works
- C. is working
- D. work

38. I _____ to the same barber since last year.

- A. am going
- B. have been going
- C. go
- D. had gone

39. Her father _____ when she was a small girl.

- A. dies
- B. died
- C. has died
- D. had died

40. Last week, my professor promised that he _____ today.

- A. would come
- B. will come
- C. comes
- D. coming

41. Pasteur _____ in the 19th century.

- A. was living
- B. lived
- C. had lived
- D. has lived

C. Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. Eight years ago we started writing to each other.

- A. We have rarely written to each other for eight years.
- B. Eight years is a long time for us to write to each other.
- C. We wrote to each other eight years ago.
- D. We have been writing to each other for eight years.

2. The boy was so lazy that he couldn't stay up late to learn his lessons.

- A. The boy was lazy enough not to stay up late to learn his lessons.
- B. The boy was too lazy to stay up late to learn his lessons.
- C. The boy was lazy enough but he stayed up late to learn his lessons.
- D. The boy was lazy enough to stay up late to learn his lessons.

3. *My father is tired of seeing any violent films.*

- A. My father hasn't seen a violent film.
- B. My father has enjoyed all the violent films he has ever seen.
- C. My father is worried about missing the next violent film.
- D. My father never wants to see another violent film.

4. *As soon as he waved his hand, she turned away.*

- A. He saw her turn away and he waved his hand.
- B. No sooner had he waved his hand than she turned away.
- C. She turned away because he waved his hand too early.
- D. Although she turned away, he waved his hand.

5. *John wishes he had remembered to send Mary a Christmas card.*

- A. John regrets not to send Mary a Christmas card.
- B. John regrets forgetting not to send Mary a Christmas card.
- C. John regrets not remembering sending Mary a Christmas card.
- D. John regrets forgetting to send Mary a Christmas card.

6. *My father hasn't smoked cigarettes for a month.*

- A. It's a month since my father last smoked cigarettes.
- B. It's a month ago that my father smoked cigarettes.
- C. It's a month that my father hasn't smoked cigarettes.
- D. It's a cigarette that my father smoked a month ago.

7. *Having finished their work, the workers expected to be paid.*

- A. The workers expected to be paid because they had finished their work.
- B. Having their work finished, the workers expected to be paid.
- C. Having expected to be paid, the workers finished their work.
- D. Having been finished their work, the workers expected to be paid.

8. *Mr. Brown bought this car five years ago.*

- A. Mr. Brown started to buy this car five years ago.
- B. It has been five years when Mr. Brown bought this car
- C. Mr. Brown has had this car for five years .
- D. It is five years ago since Mr. Brown bought this car.

9. *I might go camping. My friends have invited me.*

- A. My friends have invited me to go camping.
- B. My friends have invited me go camping.

C. My friends have invited me going camping.

D. My friends have invited me that I might go camping.

10. *I haven't enjoyed myself so much for years.*

- A. It's years since I enjoyed myself so much.
- B. It's years since I have enjoyed myself so much.
- C. It was years since I had enjoyed myself so much.
- D. It has been years since I have enjoyed myself so much.

11. *Have you heard the good news?* _____

- A. Carol in March had a baby.
- B. In March, Carol had a baby.
- C. Carol had in March a baby.
- D. In March, had Carol a baby.

12. *Although the driver slammed on his brakes, _____*

- A. he was able to avoid hitting the small dog.
- B. the small dog was not hit by the car.
- C. he could run over the small dog.
- D. he couldn't avoid hitting the small dog.

13. *John used to write home once a week when he was abroad.*

- A. John doesn't now write home once a week any longer.
- B. John enjoyed writing home every week when he was abroad.
- C. John never forgot to write a weekly letter home when he was abroad.
- D. When he was abroad he remembered to write home every week.

14. *This is my tenth year working in this bank.*

- A. By the end of this year, I will work in this bank for ten years.
- B. I have worked in this bank for ten years by the end of this year.
- C. By the end of this year, I will have worked in this bank for ten years.
- D. I had been working in this bank for ten years by the end of this year.

15. *The famous actor was last seen in 2000.*

- A. The famous actor has not been able to see since 2000.
- B. No one has seen the famous actor since 2000.
- C. The famous actor didn't see anyone in 2000.
- D. No one saw the famous actor until 2000.

16. *I came to live here three months ago.*

- A. It was three months since I lived here.
- B. I've been living here for three months.
- C. I lived here for three months.
- D. I didn't live here for three months.

17. *She is sitting in a hotel room. Through the window, she sees a fat man.*

- A. She looks through the window and sees the fat man.
- B. She and the fat man are in a hotel room.
- C. The fat man wants to open the window and come in.
- D. The fat man is looking in through the window.

18. *She goes to the shops every Friday.*

- A. She goes every day to the shop but not on Friday.
- B. It's not Friday, but she's going to the shops.
- C. She always goes to the shops on Friday.
- D. She never goes to the shops on Friday.

19. *Michael took a deep breath and dived into the water.*

- A. After Michael had taken a deep breath, he dived into the water.
- B. Having taken a deep breath, he dived into the water.
- C. After Michael took a deep breath, he had dived into the water.
- D. A & B are correct.

20. *We started working here three years ago.*

- A. We worked here for three years.
- B. We have no longer worked here for three years.
- C. We have worked here for three years.
- D. We will work here in three years.

21. *It's a long time since we last went to the cinema.*

- A. We have been to the cinema for a long time.
- B. We haven't been to the cinema for a long time.
- C. We don't go to the cinema as we used to.
- D. We wish we went to the cinema now.

22. *I haven't finished this book yet.*

- A. I'm still reading this book.
- B. I have read this book before.

C. The book I'm reading hasn't finished.

D. I will read this book some day.

23. *He used to jog every morning.*

- A. He enjoys jogging every morning.
- B. He never fails to jog every morning.
- C. He doesn't now jog every morning.
- D. He intended to jog every morning.

24. *I have never felt happier than I do now.*

- A. I felt happier before.
- B. I feel happy now.
- C. I have never felt happy.
- D. I have always felt happy.

25. *He last had his eyes tested ten months ago.*

- A. He hasn't had his eyes tested for ten months.
- B. He had not tested his eyes for ten months then.
- C. He had tested his eyes ten months before.
- D. He didn't have any test on his eyes in ten months.

26. *Someone knocked on the door during my lunchtime.*

- A. I had lunch when someone knocked on the door.
- B. When I had had lunch, someone knocked on the door.
- C. I was having lunch when someone was knocking on the door.
- D. I was having lunch when someone knocked on the door.

27. *Steve left before my arrival.*

- A. When I arrived, Steve had already left.
- B. Steve left as soon as I arrived.
- C. While Steve was leaving I arrived.
- D. Steve hadn't left until I arrived.

28. *I haven't been here before.*

- A. Being here is a pleasant experience.
- B. This is the first time I have been here.
- C. I have wished to be here for long.
- D. Before long I will be here.

29. The last time I saw Rose was three years ago.
 A. I hasn't seen Rose for three years.
 B. I haven't seen Rose three years ago.
 C. I haven't seen Rose since three years.
 D. I haven't seen Rose for three years.
30. When we arrived, the children were playing "Hide and Seek"
 A. The children played "Hide and Seek" and then we arrived.
 B. While the children were playing "Hide and Seek", we arrived.
 C. We arrived at the same time the children played "Hide and Seek".
 D. We didn't arrive until the children played "Hide and Seek".

UNIT 3

PASSIVE VOICE CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG

LÝ THUYẾT



- ❖ Các bước đổi câu chủ động sang câu bị động
- ❖ Động từ trong câu chủ động và bị động
- ❖ Một số điểm cần lưu ý

I. CÁC BƯỚC ĐỔI CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG SANG CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG:

- 1) Xác định S, V, O trong câu chủ động
 - 2) Xác định thì của động từ
 - 3) Đem O trong câu chủ động làm S trong câu bị động, đem S trong câu chủ động làm O trong câu bị động
 - 4) Lấy V chính trong câu chủ động đổi thành V3/ed rồi thêm BE thích hợp trước V3/ed
 - 5) Đặt BY trước O trong câu bị động
- Eg: (A) The cat ate the mouse.
 → (P) The mouse was eaten by the cat.

Trong (A), *The cat* là S, *ate* là V chính, *the mouse* là O. Đem the mouse làm S và *the cat* làm O trong (P). Lấy V chính đổi thành V3 là *eaten*. Do V chính trong (A) ở thì quá khứ đơn và *The mouse* trong (P) số ít nên BE phải là *was*. Đặt by trước *the cat*.

II. ĐỘNG TỪ TRONG CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG VÀ BỊ ĐỘNG:

Tenses examples	Active	Passive
Simple present	Lan cleans the floor every morning.	The floor is cleaned by Lan every morning.
Simple past	Nam broke the glasses.	The glasses were broken by Nam.
Present continuous	The pupil is not doing some exercises.	Some exercises are not being done by the pupil.
Past continuous	Mother was cooking dinner at 6 yesterday.	Dinner was being cooked by mother at 6 yesterday.
Present perfect	The secretary has just finished the report.	The report has just been finished by the secretary.
Past perfect	The boy had found the key before 9 yesterday.	The key had been found by the boy before 9 yesterday.
Simple future	Mr. Brown will not teach our class.	Our class will not be taught by Mr. Brown.
Future perfect	The students will have written many compositions.	Many compositions will have been written by the students.
Modal verbs	The students must do this exercise in class.	This exercise must be done in class by the students.

III- MỘT SỐ ĐIỂM CẦN LUU Ý:

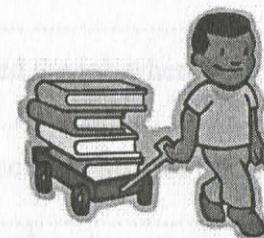
1) Câu hỏi chủ động và bị động:

- (A) Did your father make this chair?
- (P) Was this chair made by your father?
- (A) Who repaired your bicycle?

- (P) Whom was your bicycle repaired by?
(By whom was your bicycle repaired?)
(A) What plays did Shakespeare write?
→ (P) What plays were written by Shakespeare?
- 2) **Lực bỗ túc từ trong câu bị động:**
Nếu chủ từ trong câu chủ động KHÔNG chỉ rõ là người hay vật cụ thể, rõ ràng (people, someone, every one, no one, any one, I, we, you, they, s/he, it) thì khi đổi sang câu bị động (by people /someone / every one / no one / any one / me / us / you / them / her / him / it) có thể được bỏ đi.
Eg: (A) People built that bridge in 1998.
→ (P) That bridge was built in 1998.

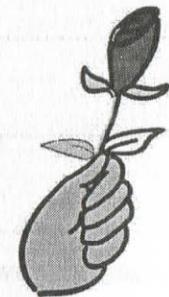
3) Động từ có hai túc từ:

- 3.1 **Động từ cần giới từ TO:** give, lend, send, show, ...
(A) John will give me this book. (= John will give this book to me.)
→ (P1) I will be given this book by John.
→ (P2) This book will be given to me by John.



3.2 **Động từ cần giới từ FOR:** buy, make, get, ...

- (A) He bought her a rose. (= He bought a rose for her.)
→ (P1) She was bought a rose.
→ (P2) A rose was bought for her.



4) Một số dạng bị động khác:

- 4.1 **Cấu trúc They/People say/think/believe... that ...**
- (A) People say that Henry eats ten eggs a day.
→ (P1) It is said that Henry eats ten eggs a day.
→ (P2) Henry is said to eat ten eggs a day.

- (A) They thought that Mary had gone away.

→ (P1) It was thought that Mary had gone away.

→ (P2) Mary was thought to have gone away.

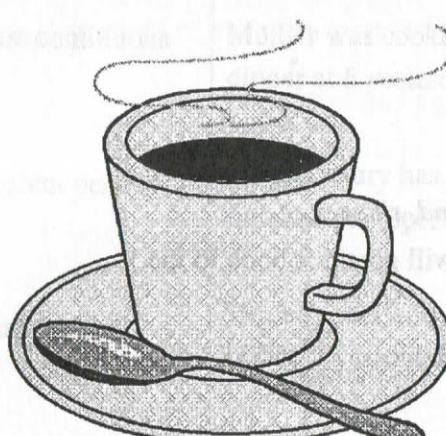
4.2 Câu trúc HAVE / GET + something + V3/ed

- (A) I had him repair my car.

→ (P) I had my car repaired (by him).

- (A) I get her to make some coffee.

→ (P) I get some coffee made (by her).



BÀI TẬP

A. Change into passive voice.

1. The teacher corrects our exercises at home.

.....

2. Ali's mother worried his absence.

.....

3. They are building several new schools in our town.

.....

4. We have made great progress in industry, science and medicine.

.....

5. Sam killed a lion last week.

.....

6. You must hand in your report before the end of this month.

.....

7. I had just finished the job when the factory closed.

.....

8. No one has opened that box for the past hundred years.

.....

9. Are you going to mail these letters soon?

.....

10. He should have finished the report yesterday.

.....

11. Scientists began to carry out researches on SIDA two years ago.

.....

12. They say that he is the richest man in our town.

.....

13. I can assure you I will arrange everything in time.

.....

14. We are to pity rather than despise these homeless boys.

15. We haven't moved anything since they sent you away to cure you.

B. Change into passive voice.

1. She fell into water because somebody pushed her.

2. What ought we to do about this?

3. It is time they brought the cows in.

4. What questions did the Examiner set?

5. Somebody must do something for these poor men.

6. Nobody has made mistakes.

7. Nobody has answered my question properly.

8. Somebody has brought this child up badly.

9. The teacher promised Jane a prize if she worked well.

10. Nobody has ever spoken to me like that before.

11. I hate people looking at me.

12. Teachers should make lessons more interesting for school children.

13. I'd like someone to read to me.

14. We shall lock the house up for summer and the old gardener will look after it.

15. People say tortoises live longer than elephants.

16. One cannot eat an orange if nobody has peeled it.

17. Don't let the others see you.

18. Did anybody ever teach you how to behave?

19. It surprised me to hear someone had robbed you.

20. People ought to tell us how much they expect of us.

C. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

1. "What a beautiful shirt you're wearing!"

"Thank you. It especially for me by my mother."

- A. is made B. has made
C. made D. was made

2. I don't understand why the students didn't keep silent while the speech

- A. has been made B. was made
C. would be made D. was being made

3. This is the first time I have seen this car. Where

- A. did it make B. did it made
C. was it make D. was it made

4. Today, many serious childhood diseases by early immunization.

- A. are preventing B. can prevent
C. prevent D. can be prevented

5. Whole-grain food products in most large supermarkets across the United States and Canada.

- A. now can purchase B. can now be purchased
C. now to purchase D. the purchase of which

28. The money to him 2 months ago, but it back yet.
A. was lent/ had not been given B. has been lent/ was not given
C. was lent/ has not given D. was lent/ has not been given
29. She could easily for a top model.
A. be mistaken B. have mistaken
C. been mistaken D. to be mistaken
30. My shirt by my sister on my last birthday.
A. gave B. was given
C. had been given D. was being given

D. Choose one sentence that best rewrites the sentence given.

1. *He broke my watch.*
A. My watch were broken. B. My watch be broken.
C. My watch is broken. D. My watch was broken.

2. *The teacher explained the rule to the students.*
A. The rule was explained to the students.
B. The students were explained the rule.
C. The students were explained the rules.
D. A and B are correct

3. *He often asks me to help him.*
A. He is often asked to help them.
B. They are often asked to help me.
C. I am often asked to help him.
D. I am often asked him to help me.

4. *His friends never forgave his betrayal.*
A. His betrayal were never forgiven by his friends.
B. His betrayal was never forgiven by his friends.
C. His betrayal was never forgave by his friends
D. His betrayal never forgave by his friends.

5. *I am sure we'll settle the matter easily.*
A. I'm sure the matter will settle easily.
B. I'm sure the matter will be settled easily.

- C. I'm sure the matter will settled easily.
D. I'm sure the matter won't be settled easily.
6. *We sent for the police.*
A. The police was sent for
B. The police was sent.
C. The police were sent for.
D. The police was sent for us
7. *They speak much about this book.*
A. This book is much spoken about.
B. This book is much spoken.
C. This book is much about spoken.
D. This book are much spoken about.
8. *Have they tested all the machines?*
A. Have all the machines be tested?
B. Have all the machines been testing?
C. Have all the machines been tested?
D. Have all the machines been being testing?
9. *Does he realize that they are laughing at him?*
A. Is he realized that he is laughing at?
B. Is he realized that he is being laughed at?
C. Does he realize that he is laughing at?
D. Does he realize that he is being laughed at?
10. *The manager offers me several jobs.*
A. I was offers several jobs.
B. I am offered several jobs.
C. Several jobs are offered to me.
D. B and C are correct.
11. *We found that they had cancelled the soccer match.*
A. We found that the soccer match had been cancelled.
B. The soccer match had been cancelled.
C. The soccer match was found that had been cancelled.
D. The soccer match was found to have been cancelled by us.

12. "Did Shakespeare write this play?"

- A. Did this play be written by Shakespeare?
- B. Was this play written by Shakespeare?
- C. This play was written by Shakespeare.
- D. Did this play Shakespeare write?

13. Which book do the students love?

- A. Which book are done love by the students?
- B. Which book is the students loved?
- C. Which book are loved by the students?
- D. Which book is loved by the students?

14. How many slums are they going to clear?

- A. How many slums are being gone to clear?
- B. How many slums are being cleared?
- C. How many slums are going to clear?
- D. How many slums are going to be cleared?

15. Who wrote the report on the air pollution?

- A. By whom was the report on the air pollution written?
- B. Whom was the report written on the air pollution by?
- C. By whom was the report written on the air pollution?
- D. All are correct.

16. Who killed President John Kennedy?

- A. By whom President John Kennedy was killed?
- B. By whom was President John Kennedy killed?
- C. By whom was killed President John Kennedy?
- D. By whom killed President John Kennedy?

17. How many students are carrying the bookshelf?

- A. By how many students are the bookshelf being carried?
- B. By how many students is the bookshelf being carried?
- C. By how many students is the bookshelf been carrying?
- D. By how many students are the bookshelf be carrying?

18. People say that Mary is a good worker.

- A. Mary is said that she is a good worker.
- B. Mary is said to be a good worker.

C. It is said to be a good worker.

D. Mary is said that to be a good worker.

19. It is believed that the man escaped in a stolen car.

- A. The man is believed to escaped in a stolen car.
- B. The man is believed to have escaped in a stolen car.
- C. The man is believed to escaped in a stolen car.
- D. They believed that the man stole the car.

20. It was thought that the building had been destroyed.

- A. The building was thought had been destroyed.
- B. The building was thought to have been destroyed.
- C. The building thought to be destroyed.
- D. They have destroyed the building.

UNIT 4

TAG QUESTIONS

CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI

LÝ THUYẾT

Trong câu hỏi đuôi, người đặt câu hỏi đưa ra một mệnh đề (mệnh đề chính) nhưng không hoàn toàn chắc chắn về tính đúng / sai của mệnh đề đó, do vậy họ dùng câu hỏi dạng này để kiểm chứng về mệnh đề đưa ra.

- He should stay in bed, shouldn't he? (Anh ấy nên ở yên trên giường, có phải không?)
- She has been studying English for two years, hasn't she?

Câu hỏi đuôi chia làm hai thành phần tách biệt nhau bởi dấu phẩy theo quy tắc sau:

1. Sử dụng trợ động từ giống như ở mệnh đề chính để làm phần đuôi câu hỏi. Nếu không có trợ động từ thì dùng *do*, *does*, *did* để thay thế.
2. Nếu mệnh đề chính ở thẻ khẳng định thì phần đuôi ở thẻ phủ định và ngược lại.
3. Thời của động từ ở đuôi phải theo thời của động từ ở mệnh đề chính.
4. Chủ ngữ của mệnh đề chính và của phần đuôi là giống nhau. Đại từ ở phần đuôi luôn phải để ở dạng chủ ngữ (in subject form).
5. Phần đuôi nếu ở dạng phủ định thì thường được rút gọn (*n't*). Nếu không rút gọn thì phải theo thứ tự: auxiliary + subject + not? (He saw it yesterday, did he not?)
6. Động từ *have* có thể là động từ chính, cũng có thể là trợ động từ. Khi nó là động từ chính của mệnh đề trong tiếng Anh Mỹ thì phần đuôi phải dùng trợ động từ *do*, *does* hoặc *did*. Tuy nhiên, trong tiếng Anh Anh thì bạn có thể dùng chính *have* như một trợ động từ trong trường hợp này. Khi bạn thi TOEFL là kỳ thi kiểm tra tiếng Anh Mỹ, bạn phải chú ý để khỏi bị mất điểm.

→ *There is, there are* và *it is* là các chủ ngữ giả nên phần đuôi được phép dùng lại *there* hoặc *it* giống như trường hợp đại từ làm chủ ngữ.

BÀI TẬP

A. Finish these sentences by adding a tag question with the correct form of the verbs and the subject pronoun.

1. You're going to school tomorrow, _____?
2. Gary signed the petition, _____?
3. There's an exam tomorrow, _____?
4. Beverly will be attending the university in September, _____?
5. She's been studying English for two years, _____?
6. It doesn't work, _____?
7. He should stay in bed, _____?
8. Let's go fishing, _____?
9. Jill and Joe have been to Mexico, _____?
10. You and I talked to the professor yesterday, _____?
11. You will stay in touch, _____?
12. After the couple of the years the heat gets too much, _____?
13. You didn't know I was an artist, _____?
14. It is quite warm, _____?
15. That hardly counts, _____?
16. Oh, he wants us to make films as well, _____?
17. I'll tell you roughly, _____?
18. You rarely see that sort of thing these days, _____?
19. Women are very seldom convicted, _____?
20. Nobody knows the answer, _____?

B. Choose the correct answer (A, B, C, or D).

1. We should call Rita, _____?
A. should we B. shouldn't we C. shall we D. should not we
2. Monkeys can't sing, _____?
A. can they B. can it C. can't they D. can't it

3. These books aren't yours, _____?
 A. are these B. aren't these C. are they D. aren't they
4. That's Bod, _____?
 A. is that B. isn't it C. isn't that D. is it
5. No one died in the accident, _____?
 A. did they B. didn't they C. did he D. didn't he
6. The air-hostess knows the time she has been here, _____?
 A. does she B. isn't it C. doesn't she D. did she
7. This is the second time she's been here, _____?
 A. isn't this B. isn't it C. has she D. hasn't she
8. They must do as they are told, _____?
 A. mustn't they B. must they C. are they D. aren't they
9. He hardly has anything nowadays, _____?
 A. hasn't she B. has he C. doesn't he D. does she
10. You've never been in Italy, _____?
 A. have you B. haven't you C. been you D. had you
11. Sally turned her report, _____?
 A. didn't she B. did she C. hadn't she D. didn't she
12. You have a ticket to the game, _____?
 A. have you B. don't you C. haven't you D. do you
13. Tom knows Alice, _____?
 A. doesn't he B. is he C. does he D. isn't he
14. Come into the kitchen, _____?
 A. do you B. will you C. won't you D. B and C
15. Everybody likes beauty, _____?
 A. doesn't he B. do they C. don't they D. does he
16. Peter never comes to class late, _____?
 A. doesn't he B. doesn't Peter C. does he D. does Peter
17. I'm going to see my grandparents in HCM City next week, _____?
 A. aren't I B. am I not C. are you D. A and B
18. Your baby is very lovely, _____?
 A. is he B. isn't he C. is it D. isn't it

UNIT 5

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES AND CONNECTORS MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ VÀ TỪ NỐI



LÝ THUYẾT

- ❖ *Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ mục đích*
- ❖ *Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ kết quả*
- ❖ *Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do*
- ❖ *Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ sự tương phản*
- ❖ *Mệnh đề sau as if/ as though, it's time, would rather*
- ❖ *Câu điều kiện và câu ao ước*
- ❖ *Mệnh đề danh từ (noun clause)*
- ❖ *Mệnh đề quan hệ*

I. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH

A) Cụm từ chỉ mục đích

Để diễn đạt mục đích của hành động ta dùng

To
 In order to
 So as to

+ V

Eg: He went to France to/in order to/ so as to study French (dạng khẳng định)

Eg: He study hard so as not to/ in order not to fail the exam (dạng phủ định)

- For + danh từ cũng dùng để diễn đạt mục đích

Eg: I went to store for some bread = I went to store to buy some bread.

- For + sb + to V

Eg: I left the door unlocked for Harry to get in.

B) Mệnh đề chỉ mục đích

	so that	will/would
S + V	+ S + can/could	+ V
In order that		may/might

Eg: I will study English in order that I can find a good job.

Eg: We moved to London so that we could visit our parents more often.

Note: Ta dùng **will/can/may** khi diễn tả mục đích ở **hiện tại**

Ta dùng **would/could/might** khi diễn tả mục đích ở **quá khứ**

II. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ

A. Cụm từ chỉ kết quả

1. Too to (quá đến nỗi không thể)

Too + adj/adv + to V

Eg: She speaks too fast to understand.

He is too short to play basket ball.

Note: *Too much/ too many* thường dùng trước danh từ không đếm được/ đếm được

Eg: There are too many people at the meeting

2. Enough ... to V (đủ để có thể)

Adj/adv + enough + to V

Eg: Mary is old enough to do what she wants.

Eg: He didn't jump high enough to win a prize.

Enough thường đứng trước danh từ: **Enough + noun + to V**

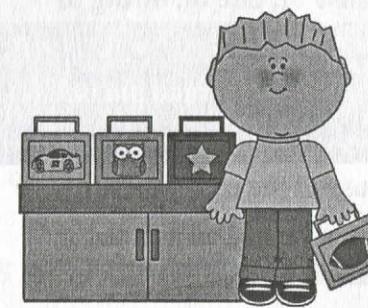
Eg: I have enough money to buy this book

Note: Cụm từ với **for** có thể được dùng sau **too** và **enough**

Too + adj/adv + for + N/pronoun (+ to V)

Adj/adv + enough + for + N/pronoun (+ to V)

Eg: The box is too heavy for me to lift.



B. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả (adverb clauses of result)

1. So ... that (quá ... đến nỗi)

S + V + so + adj/adv	+ that + S + V
Main clause	ADV clause

Eg: It was so dark that I couldn't see anything.

She runs so quickly that I can't follow.

Khi tính từ là **much/many/little/few** thì có thể có danh từ theo sau

So many/few + plural noun + that

So much/little + uncountable noun + that

Eg: She has so many children that she can't remember their dates of birth.

I have so little money that I can't buy this pen.

2. Such ... that (quá ... đến nỗi) (cấu trúc dùng với danh từ)

S + V + such + (a/an) + adj + Noun + that + S + V

Eg: They have such a big dog that no one dares

It is such a heavy box that he can't lift.



III. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN HOẶC LÝ DO

A. Cụm từ chỉ lý do: because of, due to, owing to

because of	+ noun / noun phrase /
due to	gerund phrase
owing to	

Eg: We didn't go out because of the cold weather.

Owing to his carelessness we had an accident.

B. Mệnh đề chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lí do

because	
since	+ S + V
as	

Eg: He came late because he missed the bus.

Note: because dùng để đưa nguyên nhân, lý do người nghe chưa biết.

Since/ as thường dùng khi người nghe đã biết nguyên nhân.

IV. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ TƯƠNG PHẢN (NHƯỢNG BỘ)

A. Cụm từ chỉ tương phản: inspite of/ despite

In spite of	+ noun / noun phrase/ gerund phrase
Despite	

Eg: I wasn't tired in spite of working hard all day.

Despite the danger, he reported on the war.

B. Mệnh đề chỉ tương phản

1. Though/although/even though

Although	
Though	+ S + V
Even though	

Eg: Although the weather was bad, we had a wonderful holiday

Even though I don't love her, I try my best to help her

2. No matter, whatever

No matter + what/who/when/where/why/how (adj/adv) + S + V
Whatever (+ noun)/ whoever/wherever/whenever/however (+adj) + S + V

Eg: No matter who you are, I still love you.

Whatever he says, I don't believe him.

V. MỆNH ĐỀ SAU AS IF/ AS THOUGH, IT'S (HIGH) TIME, WOULD RATHER

A. As if/ as though:

1. Diễn tả điều không có thật ở hiện tại không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại

S + V + as if/ as though + S + Ved
were

Eg: He talks as if he were a king

Eg: She orders me as though she were my mother

2. Diễn tả điều không có thật ở quá khứ (không thể xảy ra ở quá khứ)

S + Ved + as if/ as though + S + had + P2

Eg: He looked as if he had seen a ghost

B. It's (high) time

1. It's time dùng với động từ nguyên thể

It's time + (for sb) + to V

Eg: it's time to go to school

2. It's time dùng với mệnh đề

It's time + S + Ved

Eg: it's time you went to school

C. Would rather

1. Với câu có 1 chủ ngữ (Would rather = thích làm gì...hơn)

a. Ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

S + would rather (+not) + V (+than + V)

Eg: I would rather stay at home than go to school.

She would rather not go out this evening.

b. Ở quá khứ

S + would rather (+not) + have P2 (+than)

Eg: I would rather have gone to cinema last week.

2. Với câu có 2 chủ ngữ (mong muốn người khác làm gì)

a. Ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

S + would rather (that) + S + Ved

Eg: I would rather you went home now.

Note: were có thể thay cho was với ngôi *he, she, it*

b. Ở quá khứ

S + would rather (that) + S + past perfect

She would rather they hadn't left home yesterday.

Note: trong trường hợp này người ta thường dùng *wish*

She would rather they hadn't left home yesterday.

= She wishes they hadn't left home yesterday.

BÀI TẬP

A. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

- he always did well on his English tests, his parents were not surprised that he got a B level.
A. When B. Since C. Because of D. Although
- You should keep the milk in the refrigerator, it doesn't go bad.
A. since B. so that C. because D. after
- You should say goodbye to your brother you leave for Europe.
A. despite B. after C. since D. before
- he is old, he wants to travel around the world.
A. In spite of B. Although C. Despite D. Because
- my father has high blood pressure, he has to watch what he eats.
A. Although B. After C. Since D. Before
- I came to this country, I couldn't speak a word of English.
A. Since B. After C. When D. Before
- I'll let you know I come back.
A. though B. since C. because D. before
- He doesn't understand he doesn't speak French very well.
A. whenever B. so that C. because D. before
- He spoke slowly she would understand.
A. while B. after C. so that D. because
- you stop crying, I'll buy you an ice cream.
A. Unless B. If C. Since D. As
- she's got an English name, she is in fact Vietnamese.
A. Despite B. Although C. In spite of D. More than
- you subtract 7 from 12, you will have 5.
A. Because B. If C. Though D. As
- They left the house saying good-bye to their mother.
A. before B. after C. during D. in
- Mr. Young is not only healthy also cheerful.
A. and B. both C. but D. with

15. The class discussion was short., we gained some new knowledge from it.
A. However B. Moreover C. Although D. Therefore
16. The underground is cheap;, it is faster than the train.
A. however B. moreover C. but D. though
17. you study harder, you will not win a scholarship.
A. Unless B. Because C. If D. In order that
18. The country air is fresh., it is not polluted.
A. However B. Moreover C. Whenever D. Beside
19. she spoke slowly, I couldn't understand her.
A. Since B. Although C. If D. As
20. He never goes to bed he finishes his homework.
A. unless B. when C. while D. if
21. She is looking for a new job she is tired of doing a routine job day after day.
A. since B. as C. because D. all are correct
22. She can't marry her cousin she loves him.
A. though B. so C. despite D. because
23. He's still going to school his injury.
A. even though B. although C. in spite of D. even
24. He left home early he could arrive at the station on time.
A. because of B. in order to C. although D. so that
25. We will wait here he comes back.
A. while B. until C. before D. after
26. Thousands of people came to see the Queen the rain.
A. because B. owing to C. in spite of D. according to
27. We could reach the house the road was flooded.
A. although B. whether C. as if D. even
28. You have to make up your mind fast, you slip the best opportunity.
A. and B. so that C. if D. or
29. My mother looks she is tired. Perhaps she didn't sleep well last night.
A. like B. although C. until D. as if
30. Our teacher speaks slowly we may understand him.
A. because B. in order to C. so that D. or

31. I haven't seen Tom he gave me this book.
A. since B. for C. until D. before
32. it is getting dark, she still waits for him.
A. Unless B. Since C. While D. Although
33. he has a headache, he has to take an aspirin.
A. How B. Because C. Where D. Although
34. Mary asked her husband: "What would you like for supper?"
He answered " I am so tired, I want to have some shrimp soup."
A. However B. Moreover C. Since D. Although
35. it rained heavily, they went to school on time.
A. Even though B. despite C. Though D. A and C are correct
36. Our visit to Japan was delayed my wife's illness.
A. because B. because of C. thanks to D. though
37. he comes to theater with me, I shall go alone.
A. Because of B. Unless C. Because D. When
38. Trees won't grow there is enough water.
A. if B. when C. unless D. as
39. The flight had to be delayed the bad weather.
A. because B. due to C. because of D. B and C are correct
40. she's busy, she still helps you.
A. Although B. Because C. Since D. As
41. the traffic was bad, I arrived on time.
A. Although B. In spite of C. Despite D. Even
42. Take a map with you you lose your way.
A. in case B. so C. because D. although
43. The play was very boring they walked out.
A. although B. so that C. since D. so
44. I couldn't unlock it I had the wrong key.
A. because B. so that C. since D. so
45. He agreed to go climbing he hated heights.
A. although B. in case C. since D. because

46. He got a new alarm clock he'd get up on time.
A. although B. so that C. since D. so
47. He hasn't written to us he left.
A. as long as B. since C. by the time D. as soon as
48. She'll only do the job you pay her more.
A. before B. after C. if D. while
49. I never take an umbrella it's raining heavily.
A. when B. whenever C. if D. unless
50. rain or snow, there are always more than fifty thousand fans at the football games.
A. Despite B. Although C. Despite of D. Although
51. A small fish needs camouflage to hide itself its enemies cannot find it.
A. so that B. so C. therefore D. due to
52. The gate was shut the cows won't get out of the cage.
A. so as to B. in order to C. so as not D. so that
53. The car was easy to recognize, it wasn't difficult for the police to catch the thieves.
A. because B. that C. so D. but
54. He works hard help his family.
A. so as that B. in order to
C. in order that D. A and B are correct
55. We moved to the front row we could hear and see better.
A. so B. so that C. such D. such that
56. Mozart could write music he was only five.
A. because B. although C. when D. however
57. I made a mistake I was tired.
A. though B. so that C. because D. if
58. I will wait he comes.
A. however B. until C. so that D. in spite of
59. a headache, he enjoyed the film.
A. Although B. In spite of C. Because of D. However

60. My sister will take the plane she dislikes flying.
A. because B. so that C. although D. before
61. photosynthesis were to stop, life would disappear from the planet Earth relatively quickly.
A. For B. However C. If D. Although
62. It was late, I decided to go home.
A. however B. but C. although D. and
63. Minh had a terrible headache., he went to school.
A. Therefore B. But C. However D. Although
64. Tom has a bike, he always walks to work.
A. so B. but C. however D. and
65. It was too dark to go on, we found somewhere to stay.
A. so B. but C. however D. because
66. Her mother was sick., Jane had to stay at home to look after her.
A. but B. However C. so D. Therefore
67. They asked me to wait for them, they didn't turn up.
A. so B. however C. but D. and
68. It was raining hard., the match went ahead
A. Therefore B. However C. But D. Because
69. We couldn't get a seat we arrived quite early.
A. but B. however C. nevertheless D. although
70. My car broke down on the way., when I got to the airport the plane had taken off.
A. Because B. However C. But D. Therefore
71. We keep our bread in the fridge, it doesn't go bad.
A. since B. so that C. although D. after
72. these cars are cheap, they last a long time.
A. Because B. In order that C. Although D. After
73. You should give the iron time to heat up you iron your clothes.
A. because B. so that C. even though D. before
74. You need good shoes to go hiking in the mountains the ground is rough and hard.
A. because B. so that C. before D. even though

75. Hockey players wear lots of protective clothing..... they don't get hurt.
A. because of B. after C. in order that D. though
76. he is tired, he can't work longer.
A. Because B. Even though C. Although D. Besides
77. it was so cold, he went out without an overcoat.
A. If B. Since C. Although D. Because
78. you ask him, he will help you.
A. If B. Since C. Although D. Because
79. he is so busy with his work, he always finds time to go to the concert every week.
A. If B. Since C. Although D. Because
80. He passed the examination he had been prevented by illness from studying.
A. although B. but C. however D. moreover
81. We have not won yet;, we shall try again.
A. although B. but C. however D. moreover
82. Tom was not there;, his brother was.
A. since B. and C. however D. but
83. he wasn't ready in time, we went without him.
A. When B. Moreover C. As D. So
84. Is that all would you like something else?
A. or B. but C. and D. although
85. it was late, we decided to take a taxi home.
A. Because B. Since C. As D. All are correct
86. You will have to pay higher insurance..... you buy a sports car.
A. if B. although C. so that D. before
87. You shouldn't drive drinking alcohol.
A. if B. after C. even though D. in order that
88. the dolphin lives in the sea, it is not a fish – it's a mammal.
A. Whether B. So that C. Although D. After
89. You may get malaria you are bitten by a mosquito.
A. if B. so that C. though D. before

90. I haven't been climbing I broke my leg last summer.
A. although B. since C. so that D. before
91. He jogs there is very little traffic.
A. however B. so that C. as if D. where
92. He went to bed he was sleepy.
A. because B. so that C. because of D. although
93. I will not lend you any money..... you promise to pay me back next week.
A. as if B. unless C. if D. where
94. She took a computer course she could get a better job.
A. so that B. as if C. if D. though
95. He ran fast I couldn't catch him.
A. such/that B. very/that C. too/to D. so/that
96. you save your money, you will be able to go to college.
A. Unless B. Although C. If D. So
97. Jack has a master's degree, he works as a store clerk.
A. Because B. So that C. Where D. Though
98. We took many pictures the cloudy sky.
A. despite of B. even though C. despite D. because
99. both his legs were broken, he managed to get out of the car before it exploded.
A. Because B. Although C. So that D. Where
100. We understood him he spoke very fast.
A. because of B. though C. in spite of D. despite
101. all my warnings, he tried to fix the computer himself.
A. Because B. Because of C. Although D. In spite of
102. the storm warnings, we didn't go out last night.
A. Because B. Because of C. Although D. In spite of
103. Hans finished school his leg injury.
A. because of B. despite C. though D. because
104. I try to do my homework the noise
A. because of B. although C. despite of D. in spite of
105. It was difficult to deliver the letter the sender had written the wrong address on the envelop.
A. because B. despite C. though D. because of

106. it rained heavily, we enjoyed our holiday.
 A. Because of B. Because C. Despite D. Though
107. Marcella was awarded a scholarship her superior scholastic ability.
 A. because of B. because C. despite D. although
108. having little money, they are happy.
 A. Despite B. Because of C. Although D. Because
109. she was not well, she still went to work.
 A. Because B. Because of C. Although D. In spite of
110. The student arrived late the traffic jam.
 A. because of B. in spite of C. although D. because
111. We are going to have a picnic the bad weather.
 A. because B. despite C. although D. because of
112. his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.
 A. Because of B. Because C. Though D. Despite
113. Although the sun was shining,
 A. it was very hot B. it wasn't very hot
 C. yet it was very hot D. but it was very hot
114. I knew they were talking about me they stopped when I entered the room.
 A. therefore B. despite C. so that D. because
115. Nowadays, the divorce rate is higher than it used to be. young people are allowed to decide on their marriage.
 A. despite B. but C. even though D. because
116. his poor health, Mr. Brown still works hard to support his family.
 A. Despite of B. Despite C. Although D. Because of
117. I gave up the job, the attractive salary.
 A. because B. because of C. although D. despite
118. We turned off the radio the boring program.
 A. because B. because of C. however D. In spite of
119. their valuable fur, many animals are hunted.
 A. Because B. In spite of C. Because of D. Therefore
120. my father is old, he still goes jogging.
 A. Although B. Because of C. So that D. Despite

UNIT 6

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ



LÝ THUYẾT

- ❖ Những trường hợp động từ chia dạng số ít
- ❖ Những trường hợp động từ chia dạng số nhiều
- ❖ Những trường hợp cần lưu ý

I. NHỮNG TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐỘNG TỪ CHIA DẠNG SỐ ÍT:

Nếu chủ ngữ thuộc các trường hợp sau thì động từ chia dạng số ít.

1) Danh từ đếm được số ít hoặc danh từ không đếm được:

Eg: Mary lives in China.

Milk is my favorite drink.



2) Danh từ tận cùng bằng "s" mang nghĩa số ít:

news, mathematics (maths), economics, linguistics, politics, statistics, physics, phonetics, aerobics, athletics, gymnastics, measles, mumps, rickets, diabetes, the Philippines, the United States, ...

Eg: The news is interesting.

3) **Đại từ bất định:**

every/any/no/some + body/one/thing

Eg: Someone is knocking at the door.

4) **Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng that/ what/ where/ when... hoặc cụm từ bắt đầu bằng to V/V-ing:**

Eg: That you get high marks does not surprise me.

Growing flowers was her hobby when she was young.

5) **Từ chỉ thời gian, khoảng cách, tiền bạc, đo lường, thể tích:**

Eg: Eight hours of sleep a day is enough.

Five kilometers is not a long distance.

6) **Từ định lượng + N mang nghĩa số ít:**

Eg: Each of the children has a toy.

One of my friends is coming.



II. NHỮNG TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐỘNG TỪ CHIA DẠNG SỐ NHIỀU:

Nếu chủ ngữ thuộc các trường hợp sau thì động từ chia dạng số nhiều.

1) **Danh từ đếm được số nhiều:**

Eg: Engineers are key figures in our life.

2) **Các danh từ khác nhau kết hợp bằng AND:**

Eg: Scientists and engineers are very important.

3) **Từ định lượng + N mang nghĩa số nhiều:**

Eg: Most of the students here work very hard.

Some books I read last week are written by a famous writer.

4) **Danh từ luôn ở dạng số nhiều:**

people, police, cattle, poultry, military, goods, clothes, scissors, glasses,...

Eg: The police have arrested the robbers.

Sun glasses are used to protect your eyes from the sunlight.

5) **The + Adj chỉ danh từ số nhiều:**

the rich/poor, the young/old/elderly, the homeless, the handicapped, the blind/deaf/ mute, the English/Chinese/Vietnamese,...

Eg: The poor have many problems.

III. NHỮNG TRƯỜNG HỢP CẦN LUU Ý:

1) **Khi các chủ từ được nối với nhau bởi as well as, with, along with hoặc together with, động từ sẽ hoà hợp với chủ từ thứ nhất.**

Eg: The students, as well as their teacher, have not come yet.

The teacher, as well as his students, has not come yet.

2) **Khi các chủ từ được nối với nhau bởi either ... or, neither ... nor, hoặc not only ... but also động từ sẽ hoà hợp với chủ từ gần nhất.**

Eg: Neither she nor her friends have arrived.

Not only the dogs but also the cat is mine.

3) **A number of + N số nhiều – động từ số nhiều, The number of + N số nhiều – động từ số ít:**

Eg: A number of applicants have been interviewed. (Nhiều)

The number of days in a week is seven. (Số lượng)

4) **Chủ từ là danh từ tập hợp:**

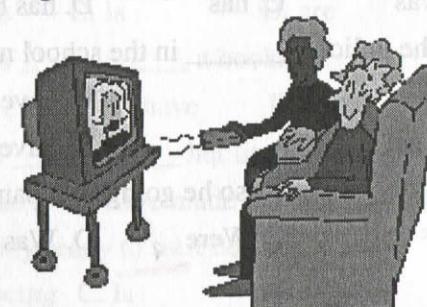
family, class, crowd, group, club, association, company, team, ...

4.1. Xem như một đơn vị - động từ số ít:

Eg: My family has three members.

4.2. Đề cập đến từng cá nhân - động từ số nhiều:

Eg: My family were watching TV at 7 yesterday.



BÀI TẬP

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The Vietnamese people _____ a heroic people.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
2. Miss White _____ her parents is going to pay a visit to the Great Wall.
A. and B both C. as well as D. or
3. The Vietnamese _____ hard-working and brave.
A. is B. are C. be D. being
4. A good deal of money _____ spent on the books.
A. have B. has C. have been D. has been
5. The manager or his secretary _____ to give you an interview.
A. is B. are C. were D. have
6. Mary is one of the girls who _____ often late for school.
A. is B. are C. comes D. get
7. Two hours _____ not long enough for this rest.
A. have B. has C. is D. are
8. Ninety percent of the work _____ been done.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
9. Those who _____ to go with me, please raise your hand.
A. want B. wants C. wanting D. are wanting
10. Salt and water _____ to wash the wound
A. is used B. are used C. was used D. were used
11. The news _____ bad last night.
A. were B. was C. has D. has been
12. Three-fifths of the police _____ in the school near the town.
A. has trained B. have trained
C. has been trained D. have been trained
13. _____ not only you but also he going to Japan?
A. Are B. Is C. Were D. Was

14. All the books on the shelf _____ to me.
A. belong B. belongs C. belonging D. is belonging
15. The trousers you bought for me _____ me.
A. don't fit B. doesn't fit C. fits D. fit not
16. Mumps _____ usually caught by children.
A. are B. was C. is D. were
17. The United States _____ between Canada and Mexico.
A. lying B. lies C. lain D. lie
18. Physics _____ us understand the natural laws.
A. helps B. help C. have helped D. helped
19. The police _____ the robber.
A. were arrested B. has arrested
C. have arrested D. was arresting
20. The cattle _____ in the field.
A. is grazing B. grazes C. has grazed D. are grazing
21. Either you or he _____ wrong.
A. are B. were C. have been D. is
22. John as well as Mary _____ very kind.
A. were B. are C. is D. have been
23. The doctor with the nurses _____ exhausted after the operation.
A. were B. was C. have been D. are being
24. Five miles _____ not very far.
A. is B. are C. were D. have been
25. _____ ten years too long?
A. Are B. Is C. Are being D. Were
26. Neither his parents nor his teacher _____ satisfied with his result.
A. are being B. were C. is D. are
27. Each boy and each girl _____ a book.
A. are having B. have had C. have D. has
28. Writing a lot of letters _____ her tired.
A. makes B. make C. have made D. are making
29. _____ everybody ready to start now?
A. Are being B. Is being C. Is D. Are

30. None of the butter in the fridge _____ good.

- A. is being B. is C. have been D. are

31. None of the students _____ the test yet.

- A. have finished B. has finished
C. finished D. is finishing

32. A pair of shoes _____ under the bed.

- A. have been B. are C. are being D. is

33. 200 tons of water _____ last month.

- A. was used B. had been used
C. were used D. is used

34. In the hotel, the bread and butter _____ for breakfast.

- A. is served B. are served C. serves D. serve

35. _____ were nice to me when I was in England.

- A. The Brown's B. Brown's
C. The Browns D. Browns

B. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order to make the sentence correct.

36. Neither his parents nor his teacher are satisfied with his result when he was at high school.

- A B C D

37. Daisy was the only one of those girls that get the scholarship.

- A B C D

38. Working provide people with personal satisfaction as well as money.

- A B C D

39. Either the doctor or the nurses takes care of changing the patients' bandages.

- A B C D

40. Every student who majors in English are ready to participate in the oratorical contest.

- A B C D

41. One hundreds eight thousand miles is the speed of light.

- A B C D

42. The guest of honour, along with his wife and children, were sitting at the first

- A B C

table when we had a party yesterday.

D

43. The audience was enjoying every minute of the performance.

- A B C D

44. All the books on the top shelf belongs to me.

- A B C D

45. Five thousand pounds were stolen from the bank.

- A B C D

46. Happiness and success depends on yourself.

- A B C D

47. The loss of her husband and two of her sons were too much for her.

- A B C D

48. David and his brother was indicted yesterday on charges of grand theft.

- A B C D

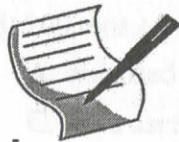
49. Current research on AIDS, in spite of the best efforts of hundreds of scientists, leave serious questions unanswered.

- C D

50. Everyone have to plan a program that fits into the day's schedule and that allows for good exercise and appropriate rest.

- C D

LÝ THUYẾT



❖ Câu điều kiện

❖ Câu ao ước: Wish (ước)/ If only (giá mà)

I. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN:

1) Ba loại câu điều kiện:

1.1 *Loại một*: Diễn tả điều kiện có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Eg: If it rains heavily, I will stay at home.

1.2 *Loại hai*: Diễn tả điều kiện không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Eg1: I would buy a new bicycle if I had enough money.

Eg2: If I were a king, you would be a queen.

1.3 *Loại ba*: Diễn tả điều kiện không thể xảy ra ở quá khứ.

Eg: If John had worked harder, he wouldn't have failed his exam.

(Sự thật là John đã không chăm chỉ và đã thi rớt.)

2) Tóm tắt công thức:

Loại	IF CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
Loại 1:	V1(s/es)	will/can/may... + V
Loại 2:	V2/ed/WERE	would/could/should... + V
Loại 3:	had +V3/ed	would/could/should... + have + V3/ed

3) Những điểm cần lưu ý:

3.1 "If ... not" có thể được thay bằng "UNLESS" (trừ phi):

Eg: We will be late if we don't hurry.

→ We will be late unless we hurry.

Eg: If I have time, I can help you.

→ Unless I have time, I can't help you.

3.2 Bỏ if trong 3 loại câu điều kiện (phải có đảo ngữ với should/ were/ had):

Eg: If it should be necessary, I will go.

→ Should it be necessary, I will go.

Eg: If I were rich, I would buy a new car.

→ Were I rich, I would buy a new car.



Eg: If you had asked me, I would have told you the answer.

→ Had you asked me, I would have told you the answer.

3.3 Một số từ/cụm từ có thể thay cho if với nghĩa tương đương: provided that/so(as) long as (miễn là)/in case (trong trường hợp)/on condition that (với điều kiện)

Eg: You can borrow my book provided that you bring it back.



II. CÂU AO ƯỚC: WISH (ƯỚC)/IF ONLY(GIÁ MÀ)

1) Không có thật ở hiện tại: V2/ed/ were

Eg: I wish Peter were here now. (He isn't here now.)

If only I had more money.

2) Không có thật ở tương lai: would + Verb

Eg: She wishes Tom would be here tomorrow.

If only Tom would be here tomorrow.

3) Không có thật ở quá khứ: had + V3/ed

Eg: We wish she had passed her exam last year.

If only you hadn't told Peter about our plan.

BÀI TẬP

A. Put the verb in brackets into the correct form.

1. If the earth suddenly (stop) _____ spinning we all (fly) _____ off it.
2. If you (smoke) _____ in a non-smoking compartment, the other passengers (object) _____.
3. (your parents / not / be) _____ proud if they could see you now?
4. I'm broke, but I (have) _____ plenty of money now if I (not/ spend) _____ so much yesterday.
5. If we (work) _____ all right, we (finish) _____ in time; but we have no intention of doing it.
6. If we (have) _____ a submarine now, we (use) _____ it to investigate the seabed.
7. Were he ten years younger, he (take) _____ part in the voyage around the world.
8. Should you come late, they (not let) _____ you in.
9. He might get rid of his cough if he (not smoke) _____ so much.
10. If someone (give) _____ you a boat what you (do) _____?
11. Water (freeze) _____ if the temperature falls below zero.
12. I (warn) _____ you if I had seen you last week.
13. He always says hello if he (see) _____ you.
14. What would you do if he (resign) _____ tomorrow?
15. I wouldn't have been so upset if Judy (write) _____ to me earlier.
16. Shout if you (see) _____ anything unusually.
17. The engine starts if you (turn) _____ this key.
18. If he weren't so bad-temper, his wife (not leave) _____ him so soon after the marriage.
19. What (you / say) _____ if I offered you a job?
20. The children always (get) _____ frightened if they watch horror films.

21. If it (not be) _____ for you, I would be late.
22. I can't help feeling sorry for the hungry children. If only there (be) _____ peace in the world.
23. Were I to become president, my first act (be) _____ to help the poor.
24. If he (listen) _____ to his father's advice, he would still be working here.
25. If she hadn't stayed up late last night, she (not / be) _____ tired now.
26. I feel as if my head (be) _____ on fire now, doctor.
27. He always talks as though he (address) _____ at a public meeting.
28. It was our fault to keep you waiting so long. We (inform) _____ you in advance.
29. Had I known her address, I (go) _____ to visit her.
30. He looked frightened as if he (see) _____ a ghost.
31. I wish I (see) _____ her off at the airport yesterday.
32. Tom wishes he (have) _____ enough money to buy a new car now.
33. Mary wishes she (become) _____ an astronaut someday.
34. I wish I (have) _____ a day off to visit his parents. He hasn't seen them for ages.
35. He wishes he (not/buy) _____ that old car.

B. Complete each of the following sentences so that it has the same meanings.

1. She doesn't live in London because she doesn't know anyone there.
She'd.....
2. I can't live in the country because I can't find a job there.
I'd
3. I don't have a spare ticket. I can't take you to the concert.
If I
4. The school children sowed some seeds, but they forgot to water them so they didn't grow.
If the children
5. They don't understand the problem. They won't find a solution.
If they

6. He sits around too much. He isn't fit.
If he

7. Carol didn't answer the phone because she was studying..
If Carol

8. Rita is exhausted today because she didn't get any sleep last night.
If Rita.....

9. She's very thin; perhaps that's why she feels cold so much.
If she

10. He never polishes his shoes, so he never looks smart.
If he

11. He can't park near his office; that's why he doesn't come by car.
If he

12. My house is guarded by two big dogs. That's the only reason it isn't broken into every night.
If my house

13. The flats are not clearly numbered, so it is very difficult to find anyone.
If the flats

14. I don't know her e-mail address, so I can't tell you.
If I

15. She works in the evening. She has no time to play with her children.
If she

16. I don't want them to be upset, so I've decided not to tell them what happened.
They.....

17. I am not tall enough to join the basketball team.
If I

18. He doesn't see the signal so he doesn't stop his car.
If he

19. Peter gets bad marks because he doesn't prepare his lessons well.
If Peter

20. Mary doesn't have enough money. She can't buy a new car.
If Mary

8. She wouldn't have given them all that money if we _____ her to.
A. wouldn't advise B. won't advise
C. hadn't advised D. didn't advise
9. If the tree hadn't been so high, he _____ it up to take his kite down.
A. could have climbed B. climb
C. is climbing D. climbed
10. If the wall weren't so high, he _____ it up to take his ball down.
A. climbed B. could climb
C. is climbing D. climb
11. If I _____ her phone number, I _____ her last night.
A. had known / could have phoned B. knew / would have phoned
C. know / can phone D. knew / could phone
12. If he _____ the truth, the police wouldn't arrest him.
A. tells B. told
C. had told D. would tell
13. If you press that button what _____?
A. would happen B. would have happened
C. will happen D. happen
14. She says if she _____ that the traffic lights were red she _____.
A. had realized / would stop B. realized / could have stopped
C. has realized / stopped D. had realized / would have stopped
15. I am very thin. I think, if I _____ smoking, I might get fat.
A. stop B. had stopped
C. will stop D. stopped
16. If I _____ that yesterday, I _____ them.
A. had discovered / would inform
B. had discovered / would have informed
C. had discovered / could inform
D. discovered / can inform
17. If you _____ to the course regularly, they _____ a certificate last year.
A. go / gave B. go / give
C. had gone / would have given D. went / would give

18. I think he is not at home. If he _____ in, he _____ the phone.
A. was / answered B. were / would answer
C. were / would have answered D. had been / would have answered
19. If I _____ in London now, I could visit British Museum.
A. were B. had been
C. have been D. would be
20. If Columbus _____ money from Queen Isabella, he _____ across the Atlantic.
A. do not receive / could not sail
B. had not received / might not have sailed
C. did not receive / might not have sailed
D. would not receive / might not sail
21. If you didn't wear shabby clothes, you _____ more good-looking.
A. will be B. would be
C. would have been D. can be
22. If your hair _____ grey now, what _____ you _____?
A. went / would / do B. goes / would / do
C. had gone / would / do D. had gone / would have / done
23. If you _____ be someone, who _____ you _____?
A. could / would / have been B. could / would / be
C. can / will / be D. are able to / will / be
24. If I _____ an Angel, I would try to make happy all the children.
A. am B. have been
C. were D. had been
25. John would be taking a great risk if he _____ his money in that business.
A. would invest B. invested
C. had invested D. invests
26. It _____ if nobody had reminded them.
A. would have be forgot B. would have been forgot
C. would have forget D. would have been forget
27. The car _____ if somebody takes it there.
A. will be repaired B. would be repaired
C. will been repaired D. is repair

28. You _____ to prison if you did that.

- A. would be send
- B. would have been sent
- C. would be sent
- D. were sent

29. You would study Italian if it _____ here.

- A. was teaching
- B. were taught
- C. would be taught
- D. is taught

30. It _____ if nobody reminded them.

- A. was forgotten
- B. would be forget
- C. would be forgot
- D. would forgot

31. The magazine _____ by more people if it had better articles.

- A. would be reading
- B. would read
- C. would be read
- D. been read

32. The joke would not be funny if it _____ into French.

- A. were translated
- B. is translated
- C. was be translated
- D. translated

33. A doctor _____ if somebody falls ill.

- A. will be cold for
- B. will be called for
- C. will call for
- D. would be call for

34. Would she go if she _____?

- A. were invited
- B. was be invited
- C. have been invited
- D. be invited

35. He _____ the death penalty if he were found guilty.

- A. would be given
- B. would be gave
- C. would given
- D. were given

36. Who would have won the World War II if the nuclear bomb _____ by the Nazis first.

- A. had be produced
- B. had produced
- C. had been produced
- D. would be produced

37. The room _____ if it is not empty.

- A. couldn't be repainted
- B. cannot be repainted
- C. could be repainted
- D. can be repainted

38. He _____ the death penalty if he had been found guilty.

- A. would has given
- B. would has been given
- C. would have given
- D. would have been given

39. The cars _____ if we had not done such a huge advertising campaign.

- A. would not have been bought
- B. would not have be bought
- C. would have been bought
- D. would not had been bought

40. If I were a better conversationalist, _____ to parties more often?

- A. I would be invited
- B. I would have been invited
- C. would I be invited
- D. would I have been invited

41. Kevin never seems to get tired. I wish I _____ his energy.

- A. can have
- B. have had
- C. had
- D. would have

42. If I _____ him yesterday, I would have to come back tomorrow.

- A. didn't meet
- B. have met
- C. met
- D. hadn't met

43. If she _____ the truth, I think she'd never want to see you again.

- A. would know
- B. knows
- C. will know
- D. knew

44. I would never have believed _____ it with my own eyes.

- A. if I didn't see
- B. if I hadn't seen
- C. if I haven't seen
- D. if I wouldn't have seen

45. I wish I had remembered your number. Otherwise, I _____ you.

- A. phoned
- B. would phone
- C. would have phoned
- D. will have phone

46. Such typing mistakes _____ avoided if you had been more careful.

- A. can have been
- B. would be
- C. might have been
- D. should be

47. Carol was late for work this morning. But for the traffic jam, she _____ half an hour earlier.

- A. could come
- B. could have come
- C. had come
- D. can have come

48. Don't worry _____ home late tonight.

- A. when I'll be
- B. if I'll be
- C. unless I'll be
- D. if I'm

49. I _____ one of my special desserts for dinner, if you like.

- A. make
- B. will make
- C. am going to make
- D. am making

50. When you see Bob, tell him he still owes me some money.

- A. see
- B. are going to see
- C. will see
- D. are seeing

51. I wish I like him, but I don't.

- A. like
- B. can like
- C. liked
- D. would like

52. She feels lonely because she doesn't know many people there. She wishes she know more people.

- A. will know
- B. knew
- C. knows
- D. has known

53. If I had the flu, I would have joined you for the trip.

- A. hadn't had
- B. haven't had
- C. didn't have
- D. had has

54. "I'm not staying any longer." "I wish you can."

- A. can
- B. will
- C. are
- D. were

55. But for the hold-up, we were here in time.

- A. would have been
- B. could be
- C. had been
- D. must have been

56. I miss my old motorbike, I wish I had it. I had it for years.

- A. I didn't sell
- B. hadn't sold
- C. had sold
- D. haven't sold

57. Jill regrets having bought that second-hand laptop. She wishes she hadn't bought it.

- A. didn't buy it
- B. hasn't bought it
- C. wouldn't have bought it
- D. hadn't bought it

58. I'm sorry I missed seeing my old friend at your party. I wish I had.

- A. had been there
- B. was there
- C. could have been there
- D. should have been there

59. I lost your phone number. Otherwise, I would contact you much earlier.

- A. will contact
- B. would have contacted
- C. would contact
- D. had contacted

60. "I'm sorry you failed the test." "Frankly, I wish I had studied harder."

- A. could study
- B. had studied
- C. have studied
- D. would have studied

61. "Are we lost?" "I'm afraid we are. If only we had a map with us."

- A. brought
- B. would have brought
- C. could have brought
- D. had brought

62. If the lecture hadn't been so quickly, we'd have understood his speech.

- A. didn't speak
- B. hadn't spoken
- C. wouldn't have spoken
- D. shouldn't have spoken

63. If you put salt in water, it dissolve.

- A. dissolves
- B. would dissolve
- C. could dissolve
- D. dissolved

64. Please, please paint the windows before you leave.

- A. If you'll have enough time
- B. If you have enough time
- C. Unless you have enough time
- D. Unless you can have enough time

65. Jeff wouldn't have bumped into the waitress if he hadn't been in such a hurry.

- A. weren't
- B. hasn't been
- C. hadn't been
- D. wouldn't have been

66. If you met Mary by chance, please give her my phone number.

- A. met
- B. should meet
- C. could meet
- D. will meet

67. My parents lent me the money. Otherwise, I wouldn't have opened this shop.

- A. hadn't opened
- B. couldn't open
- C. weren't be able to open
- D. wouldn't have opened

68. I think she would forgive you if you would speak to her.

- A. are trying
- B. would try
- C. tried
- D. have tried

69. I wouldn't have to take this course if my English were better.

- A. were
- B. had been
- C. would be
- D. would have been

70. If we hadn't got lost, we would have arrived much earlier.

- A. had
- B. would be
- C. might be
- D. could have

71. But for his wife's encouragement, he ____ gotten to the top of his profession.

- A. hadn't
- B. hasn't
- C. won't have
- D. wouldn't have

72. I wish I ____ more careful with my money in the future.

- A. would be
- B. should be
- C. could be
- D. had been

73. "You speak English well." "Yes, but I wish I _____ another foreign language well too."

- A. speak
- B. can speak
- C. would speak
- D. could speak

74. "Did you watch the football match late last night?" "No, I didn't, but I wish I ____."

- A. were
- B. have had
- C. had
- D. did

75. "I doubt whether I can get through the test." "If you did as I told you, you ____."

- A. can succeed
- B. could succeed
- C. had succeeded
- D. would have succeeded

76. "I'm too tired to study." "If you hadn't watched that late movie last night, you ____ so tired now."

- A. wouldn't be
- B. hadn't been
- C. wouldn't have been
- D. would have been

77. "Did you invest that company, Carol?" "Yes, but now I wish I ____."

- A. didn't
- B. hadn't
- C. did
- D. had

78. She was too shy. Otherwise, she ____ many more friends.

- A. will make
- B. can make
- C. would have made
- D. should have made

79. If I had known that you couldn't eat eel, I ____ bought it.

- A. wouldn't
- B. won't have
- C. hadn't
- D. wouldn't have

80. Without the life-jackets, most passengers ____ drowned in that accident.

- A. would have been
- B. would be
- C. had been
- D. were

81. "*I couldn't have made it without your help*" means

- A. I couldn't have made it if you helped me.
- B. I couldn't have made it if you had helped me.
- C. I couldn't have made it if you hadn't helped me.
- D. I couldn't have made it if you didn't help me.

82. *She didn't stop her car because she didn't see the signal.*

- A. If she saw the signal, she would stop her car.
- B. If she had seen the signal, she would stop her car.
- C. If she had seen the signal, she would have stopped her car.
- D. If she saw the signal, she would have stopped her car.

83. *His flight was delayed so he couldn't be here on time.*

- A. He would be here in time if his flight were not delayed.
- B. He would have been here in time if his flight hadn't been delayed.
- C. He would be here in time if his flight hadn't been delayed.
- D. He would have been here in time if his flight weren't delayed.

84. *Without your help, I couldn't overcome the problem.*

- A. If you don't help me, I can't overcome the problem.
- B. If you didn't help me, I couldn't overcome the problem.
- C. If you hadn't helped me, I couldn't overcome the problem.
- D. If you hadn't helped me, I couldn't have overcome the problem.

85. *Thanks to Laura's report, I was able to finish the project.*

- A. If there isn't Laura's report, I wouldn't finish the project.
- B. Had it not been for Laura's report, I wouldn't have been to finish the project.
- C. If Laura didn't help me, I wouldn't finish the project.
- D. I wouldn't have finished the project if Laura didn't help me.

D. Choose the underlined part in each sentence (A, B, C or D) that needs correcting.

86. What do you do if you won the first prize of the lottery?

- A B C D

87. Would people be able to fly, if they have feathers instead of hair?

- A B C D

88. George now wishes he hasn't broken his encouragement with Marian.

A B C D

89. I would do it if I could, but I can't so I wouldn't even try.

A B C D

90. If a drop of oil is placed in a glass of water, it would float to the top.

A B C D

91. If Peter had been more careful, he wouldn't break the camera I lent him.

A B C D

92. Roger wouldn't have made such a lot of mistakes if he hasn't been so tired.

A B C D

93. How nice it would be for our parents if we could built the house.

A B C D

94. He wouldn't have able to pass the test if his English hadn't been good enough.

A B C D

95. If only we knew all this information about the market many weeks ago.

A B C D

96. My father gave me a watch for my birthday, but I wish he has given me

A B C D

laptop instead.

A B C D

97. If your son were old enough, he could be able to take the competition next week.

A B C D

98. If she had send a telegram, we would have received it by now.

A B C D

99. They wouldn't have order more books if they had noticed that the sales were

A B C D

falling.

D

100. I would have called you if I could have known your number.

A B C D

UNIT 8

GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

DANH ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THỂ



LÝ THUYẾT

- Danh động từ (Gerund)
- Động từ nguyên mẫu có "to"
- To Infinitive or Gerund?

I. DANH ĐỘNG TỪ: (Gerund)

Eg: She enjoys listening to music.

V + V-ing (Gerund)

Một số từ/động từ sau đây cần có V-ing theo sau:

enjoy:	thích, thưởng thức	finish:	hoàn thành
postpone:	trì hoãn	avoid:	tránh
keep:	vẫn còn	practise:	thực hành
miss:	bỏ lỡ	be/get used to:	quen với
spend:	tiêu xài, trải qua	allow/permit:	cho phép
advise:	khuyên	recommend:	đề nghị, khuyên bảo
give up:	từ bỏ, đầu hàng	suggest:	đề nghị
deny:	từ chối	consider:	xem xét
quit:	rời bỏ	dislike:	không thích
like:	thích	can't help:	không thể không

* it's no use/good (không lợi ích gì), would you mind (bạn có phiền)

* worth (đáng, đáng được), busy (bận rộn)

II. ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU CÓ “TO”:

Eg: I want to learn English well.

V + TO V

Một số động từ sau đây cần có to V theo sau:

want:	muốn	expect:	<i>mong chờ, kỳ vọng</i>
refuse:	<i>từ chối</i>	hope:	<i>hy vọng</i>
decide:	<i>quyết định</i>	agree:	<i>đồng ý</i>
plan:	<i>dự định</i>	would like:	<i>muốn</i>
like:	<i>muốn</i>	fail:	<i>thất bại, hỏng</i>
learn:	<i>học</i>	afford:	<i>có đủ khả năng/ điều kiện</i>
manage:	<i>xoay sở</i>	choose:	<i>chọn lựa</i>
demand:	<i>đòi hỏi, yêu cầu</i>	prepare:	<i>chuẩn bị</i>
pretend:	<i>giả bộ</i>	promise:	<i>hứa</i>
seek:	<i>tìm kiếm</i>	threaten:	<i>đe dọa</i>
train:	<i>đào tạo, huấn luyện</i>	wish:	<i>ao ước</i>

III. TO INFINITIVE OR GERUND

1) Một số động từ có V-ing hoặc to V theo sau không làm thay đổi nghĩa:

begin/start:	<i>bắt đầu</i>	continue:	<i>tiếp tục</i>
hate:	<i>ghét</i>	can't bear:	<i>không chịu được</i>
intend:	<i>dự định</i>	love:	<i> yêu thương</i>
prefer:	<i>thích... hơn</i>	hesitate:	<i>do dự</i>

2) Một số động từ có V-ing hoặc to V theo sau làm thay đổi nghĩa:

- stop + to V: dừng lại để làm

Eg: I stop to eat lunch.

(Tôi dừng lại để ăn trưa.)



- stop + V-ing: dừng hẳn việc gì đó

Eg: He stopped smoking.

(Anh ấy đã dừng hút thuốc.)

- try + to V: cố gắng

Eg: He tries to get ten marks.

(Anh ta cố gắng đạt mười điểm.)

- try + V-ing: thử

Eg: She tried writing with her left hand.

(Cô ta thử viết bằng tay trái.)

- need + to V: cần (nghĩa chủ động)

Eg: They need to work harder.

(Họ cần làm việc chăm chỉ hơn.)

- need + V-ing: cần được (nghĩa bị động)

Eg: This room needs cleaning.

(Căn phòng này cần lau chùi.)



- remember/forget + to V: nhớ/quên làm điều gì (chưa xảy ra)

Eg: Remember to post the letter when you get to the post office.

(Nhớ gửi lá thư khi bạn đến bưu điện.)



- remember/forget + V-ing: nhớ/quên đã làm điều gì (đã xảy ra)

Eg: I will never forget seeing you here last year.

(Tôi sẽ không bao giờ quên gặp bạn tại đây vào năm ngoái.)

- regret + to V: tiếc phải làm điều gì (hành động sắp xảy ra)

Eg: I regret to tell you that you failed the exam.

(Tôi lấy làm tiếc báo cho anh hay anh đã thi hỏng.)

- regret + V-ing: tiếc đã làm điều gì (hành động đã xảy ra)

Eg: She regretted going to New York for holiday.

(Cô ấy tiếc đã đi nghỉ ở New York.)

LƯU Ý: Cấu trúc S + V + O + TO V và S + LET/MAKE + O + V

Eg: I permit you to go out tonight. They let me visit my parents.

BÀI TẬP

A. Choose the best answer to complete each sentence.

1. He is used to ----- up early in the morning.
A. get B. getting C. have gotten D. got
2. The boy was kept indoors ----- naughty.
A. to be B. have been C. for being D. when he
3. I shall never forget ----- with you to Paris last year.
A. staying B. to staying C. to stay D. stayed
4. I am looking forward to ----- you.
A. having seen B. seeing C. to see D. all are wrong
5. I always remember ----- off the lights before I leave my house.
A. turning B. to turn C. turned D. being turned
6. I can remember ----- very proud and happy when I graduated.
A. to be B. being C. be D. been
7. Did you remember ----- Jack my message?
A. have given B. be given C. giving D. to give
8. What did you forget ----- before you left for class this morning?
A. to do B. doing C. have done D. being done
9. Don't forget ----- your homework tonight!
A. doing B. to do C. to be done D. having done
10. It's important -----.
A. not worrying B. not worry C. to not worry D. not to worry
11. That book isn't worth -----.
A. read B. reading C. being read D. to read
12. It's no good ----- him the truth now.
A. to tell B. tell C. telling D. not to tell
13. It's no use ----- you didn't know.
A. pretending B. pretend C. to pretend D. pretended
14. When I'm on holiday, I enjoy ----- to get up early.
A. not have B. not having C. having not D. not to have

15. Sorry ----- you waiting so long.
A. to keep B. have kept C. keeping D. to keeping
16. That's all right. I don't mind ----- waiting.
A. have kept B. having kept C. be kept D. being kept
17. She admitted ----- the money.
A. stolen B. be stealing C. have stolen D. having stolen
18. Would you mind ----- the door?
A. close B. have closed C. closing D. to close
19. William suggested ----- to the cinema.
A. to go B. gone C. go D. going
20. Your shoes need -----.
A. to be cleaned B. cleaning C. to clean D. A&B are correct
21. Our house wants -----.
A. to be decorated B. decorating C. to decorate D. A&B are correct
22. How about ----- a drink?
A. to have B. having C. have D. have had
23. I suggest ----- at home for a change.
A. staying B. to stay C. having stayed D. stay
24. Do you consider ----- our friends on Sunday?
A. to invite B. invite C. inviting D. have invited
25. Would you mind ----- me a hand?
A. to give B. have given C. give D. giving
26. We escaped ----- to the meeting.
A. have been asked B. to be asked C. being asked D. be asked
27. Why did she avoid ----- you?
A. to have met B. meeting C. to meet D. being met
28. I prefer ----- to -----.
A. walking-cycle B. walk-cycle C. walking-cycling D. to walk-cycling

29. I ran ten kilometers without-----.

- A. stop B. stopping C. stopped D. be stopping

30. He is quite used to -----.

- A. work hard B. hardly working C. work hard D. working hard

31. I strongly objected to----- a fee for using my credit card.

- A. be charged B. charge C. be charging D. being charged

32. We should avoid ----- our environment.

- A. to pollute B. polluted C. polluting D. being polluted

33. Do you consider----- another job?

- A. to get B. to have got C. get D. getting

34. Nobody will approve of your----- that way.

- A. have behaved B. behaving C. having to behave D. behave

35. The tender plants need----- against the cold weather.

- A. protecting B. to protect C. protection D. A&C are correct

36. ----- natural resources is of great importance.

- A. Be preserve B. Preserving C. Preserved D. Presevered

37. The exam is coming, so the teachers make their students ----- a lot.

- A. working B. worked C. to work D. work

38. Her parents want her----- a doctor.

- A. to become B. become C. to becoming D. becoming

39. It is kind of you ----- me the direction.

- A. giving B. give C. to give D. gives

40. The teacher never lets us ----- out when-----.

- A. to go- explains B. go-explaining C. go-to explain D. gone-explained

41. Whenever I see an action film, I feel my heart ----- strongly.

- A. thump B. to thump C. be thumped D. being thumped

42. These employees are made----- overtime.

- A. work B. to work C. working D. worked

43. I think he is not reliable enough----- our business.

- A. to inform B. informing C. to be informed D. being informed

44. He advised me ----- the facts before I made a decision----- the job.

- A. considering-accept B. to consider- accepting
C. to consider- accept D. to consider-to accept

45. Look! Do you see an insect----- on your foot.

- A. to crawling B. crawl C. to crawl D. crawled

46. They spent two months----- their house.

- A. renew B. renewed C. renewing D. to renew

47. Their company was made----- 100,000 USD in taxes.

- A. paying B. to pay C. pay D. paid

48. We don't have enough time----- the essay so we asked the teacher for a delay.

- A. wrote B. writing C. to write D. written

49. I caught her----- my diary.

- A. reading B. read C. to read D. have read

50. -----, Mrs Pike took the baby in her arms.

- A. To smile happily B. Smiled happily
C. Smiling happily D. As soon as smiling happily

51. These workers stopped----- some coffee because they felt sleepy.

- A. to have B. have C. having D. had

52. Due to having a lot of things----- last night, we missed----- the film.

- A. for doing/to see B. done/saw
C. doing/see D. to do/seeing

53. I want to travel because I enjoy----- people and----- new places.

- A. meet/see B. meeting/seeing
C. meeting/to see D. to meet/to see

54. The council considers----- vehicles from the city center to relieve traffic jams and air pollution.

- A. ban B. banning C. banned D. to banning

55. He risked ----- his house when his company went bankrupt.

- A. lose B. to lose C. losing D. lost

56. Did you notice someone----- the room last night?

- A. enter B. to enter C. entered D. entering

57. Loyalty is considered----- one of the important qualities for true friendship.
 A. being B. been C. to be D. be
58. Those tourists were too tired-----their journey.
 A. continue B. to continue C. continuing D. continued
58. He didn't permit them----- through the military zone. He forced them-----another way.
 A. going/to go B. to go/to go C. to go/going D. go/go
59. His doctor advised him-----,but he found it impossible----- his habit.
 A. stopped smoking/quit B. to stop to smoke/quitting
 C. stopping smoking/for quitting D. to stop smoking/to quit
60. It takes three hours----- to Paris.
 A. getting B. get C. got D. to get
61. They are whispering to avoid----- by their friends.
 A. being heard B. hearing C. to be heard D. being hearing
62. I remember----- my mother said the carpets needed-----.
 A. to hear/to clean B. to hear/cleaning
 C. hearing /cleaning D. hearing/to clean
63. Would you like----- me some tea?
 A. make B. making C. made D. to make
64. They reminded me----- late.
 A. to not come B. not coming C. not to come D. to come not
65. The police let him ----- after they had asked him some questions.
 A. to leave B. leave C. leaving D. left
66. Would you mind----- me your pocket calculator?
 A. lend B. to lend C. lending D. lent
67. Despite----- very rich, she is often generous to the poor.
 A. is not B. not being C. not to be D. is not
68. She wanted----- home but the boss made her----- until she finished---- those contracts.
 A. to go/stay/typing B. going/to stay/to type
 C. to go/staying/type D. go/stay/typed

69. John suggested----- to the new branch in Vietnam.
 A. appointing B. being appointed
 C. to appoint D. to be appointed
70. Peter is not used to-----in front of the public. He often feels too nervous----- anything.
 A. speak/to say B. speak/saying
 C. spoken/for saying D. speaking/to say
71. Sorry. I forgot----- this floppy disk to him.
 A. give B. to give C. giving D. gives
72. I hate-----.
 A. to keep waiting B. to be kept waiting
 C. being kept waiting D. keep to wait
73. Everyone likes----- when they have got some success.
 A. to congratulate B. to be congratulate
 C. to be congratulating D. being congratulated
74. She expected----- soon, but things seem ----- wrong.
 A. promoting/going B. being promoted/to go
 C. to be promoted/to go D. to promote/going
75. It is not worth----- that computer. You had better----- a new one.
 A. to repair/to buy B. repairing/buy
 C. repairing/buying D. repair/buy
76. ----- farmers ----- in the fields.
 A. Watching/works B. Watch/work
 C. Watching/to work D. Watch/working
77. People didn't let him ----- into the room. He was made----- outside.
 A. to come/wait B. come/to wait
 C. coming/waiting D. come/wait
78. They will have some workers-----their house.
 A. redecorate B. to redecorate
 C. redecorating D. redecorated
79. He warned -----anything.
 A. not to touch B. me to not touch
 C. me not to touch D. not touching

80. He doesn't allow----- in his house.

- A. smoke
- B. to smoke
- C. to be smoking
- D. smoking

81. They all denied----- her.

- A. ever having seen
- B. of seeing
- C. having ever seen
- D. to see

82. I tried----- the window, but it seems not to work.

- A. open
- B. to open
- C. opening
- D. opened

83. I used to----- outdoors.

- A. work
- B. to work
- C. working
- D. worked

84. I look forward to----- home next week.

- A. go
- B. going
- C. gone
- D. having gone

85. They made a decision----- the city.

- A. leaving
- B. leave
- C. to leave
- D. left

86. It's very good of you----- me how to start this engine.

- A. show
- B. showing
- C. to show
- D. shown

87. I'm used to ----- a glass of water before----- to bed.

- A. drink/going
- B. drinking/go
- C. drink/to go
- D. drinking/going

88. It's no use----- him----- part in the competition.

- A. persuade/to take
- B. persuading/to take
- C. persuade/taking
- D. to persuade/take

89. I suggested----- a suit and tie when we went to the interview.

- A. to wear
- B. wear
- C. worn
- D. wearing

90. Let the boy----- it himself before you offer to help.

- A. try
- B. to try
- C. trying
- D. tries

91. We regret----- you that you haven't been selected for the post of senior manager.

- A. informing
- B. inform
- C. informed
- D. to inform

92. I don't enjoy ----- at by other people.

- A. to laugh
- B. to be laughed
- C. being laughed
- D. laughing

93. Ted managed----- my mind.

- A. to change
- B. changing
- C. having changed
- D. change

94. I can't afford----- a new car.

- A. buying
- B. to buy
- C. bought
- D. buy

95. Julie finally admitted----- responsible for the problem.

- A. to be
- B. been
- C. being
- D. be

96. She keeps----- to visit us ,but she never does.

- A. to promise
- B. promise
- C. promises
- D. promising

B. Identify the word or phrase that needs correcting.

97. Hellen borrowed my dictionary for look up the spelling of "occurrence".

- A
- B
- C
- D

98. The teacher opened the windows for getting some fresh air in the room.

- A
- B
- C
- D

99. I need getting a part-time job to earn some money for my school expenses.

- A
- B
- C
- D

100. My mother made me to promise to write them once a week.

- A
- B
- C
- D

101. To learn about another country it is very interesting.

- A
- B
- C
- D

102. Most students want return home as soon as possible.

- A
- B
- C
- D

103. When I went shopping, I saw a man to drive his car onto the sidewalk.

- A
- B
- C
- D

104. I asked my classmate to let me to use his shoes.

- A
- B
- C
- D

105. I am looking forward to go to swim in the ocean.

- A
- B
- C
- D

106. I had the operator to put the call through for me.

- A
- B
- C
- D

C. Choose the best answer

1) The teacher permits us (go/to go-going/went) out in a minute.

2) Tell him (to come/comes/coming/come) to see me at once.

3) He advises us (be/are/to be/being) more studious.

- 4) He allows (asking/to ask/ask/asked) him questions.
- 5) We don't allow people (smoke/smoking/smokes/to smoke) in this room.
- 6) They didn't permit (to camp/camping/camp/camps) in this wood.
- 7) Nothing will make me (change/to change/changing/changes) my mind.
- 8) Tom let me (to drive/drive/driving/drove) his car yesterday.
- 9) The teacher recommends (preparing/prepare/to prepare/prepares) the lessons well before coming to class.
- 10) Jack was allowed (renew/to renew/renewing/renewed) his student card.
- 11) The doctor made the patient (stay/to stay/staying/stayed) in bed.
- 12) He recommended me (do/to do/doing/did) it.
- 13) His parents permitted him (to go/going/go/goes) out.
- 14) They allowed me (take/taking/took/to take) the trip with them.
- 15) She advised her husband (give/giving/to gave/to give) up smoking.
- 16) He's expecting (make/to make/made/making) a trip to Ha Long Bay.
- 17) Students stopped (make/making/to make/to making) noise when the teacher came in.
- 18) I enjoy (listening/to listen/listen/listened) to classical music.
- 19) I really regret (to hurt/hurt/hurting/to hurting) your feeling when I asked you such a silly question.
- 20) He'll try (not make/not to make/to not make/not making) the same mistake again.
- 21) Would you mind (buying/buy/to buy/bought) me a newspaper?
- 22) Would you like (have/having/to have/has) a dance with me?
- 23) Did you remember (phone/to phone/phoning/phoned) Ann? Oh, no. I completely forgot it.
- 24) Those shirts need (to iron/ironing/iron/to ironing).
- 25) They finished (learning/to learn/learn/learned) and then they wanted to go out for pleasure.
- 26) When you see Tom, remember (give/giving/to give/gave) him my regards.
- 27) I hope (not to do/ do not /not doing/not to did) that tiring work again.
- 28) They postponed (building/build/to build/built) the school for lack of finance.
- 29) Are his ideas worth (listen/listening/to listen/to listening) to?
- 30) He always avoids (meeting/met/to meet/meet) in the street.

- 31) Do you agree (lend/to lend/lending/lent) me some money?
- 32) Tom refused (to give/giving/give/given) me his address.
- 33) My watch keeps (stop/to stop/stopping/stopped).
- 34) My grandfather gets used to (get/getting/to get/got) up early in the morning.
- 35) Don't forget (give/gave/giving/to give) her my message when you see her.
- 36) You should try (wearing/wear/to wear/wears) any shirts you want to buy.
- 37) I remember (meet/meeting/met/to meet) you somewhere last month.
- 38) Yasu regretted (not bringing/not to bring/not bring/didn't bring) enough money. He couldn't buy a good mobile phone.
- 39) We stopped once to buy petrol and then we stopped again (ask/to ask/asking/asked) someone the way to the hospital.
- 40) Do you often practise (speaking/to speak/speak/spoke) English?
- 41) I must remind my students that this grammar point needs (revise/revising/to revise/revised).
- 42) Your hair needs (cutting/cut/to cut/to cutting) tomorrow.
- 43) They don't allow (to smoke/smoking/be smoked/smoked) in the auditorium.
- 44) Would you like me (to turn/turn/turning/to be turned) down the radio?
- 45) Would you mind (keep/to keep/keeping/being kept) quiet for a moment?
- 46) They let us (be parked/park/to park/parking) motorbikes here but they don't allow us park cars.
- 47) If you want the milkman to leave you milk in the morning, don't forget (put/to put/putting/to be put) a milk bottle outside.
- 48) My teacher advised me (read/to read/to be read/reading) this book.
- 49) We found it very difficult (reach/reaching/to reach/to reaching) a decision.
- 50) Mary regrets (tell/to tell/telling/being told) him about her secret yesterday.
- 51) Please let me (to know/know/knowing/known) your decision.
- 52) I was looking forward to (see/to see/saw/seeing) you yesterday.
- 53) Sad movies always make me (cry/crying/to cry/to crying).
- 54) It takes me hours (to write/writing/to be written/written) a letter.
- 55) He is too busy (take/to take/taking/took) care of her.
- 56) I regret (to inform/informing/inform/informed) you that your application has been refused.
- 57) Don't forget (close/closing/to close/closed) the door before going out.

- 58) I advise you (to wait/wait/waiting/to be waited) before deciding to accept that position.
- 59) I promise to give you an opportunity (to ask/ask/asking/asked) questions.
- 60) I caught a cold yesterday from (walking/walk/walked/to walk) in the rain.

D. Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting

- 61) I still(A) remember to leave(B) your hat here(C) this morning(D).
- 62) He's(A) tired. He stopped(B) to work(C) for a while(D).
- 63) Please(A) remember write(B) to me(C) as soon(D) as possible.
- 64) She(A) began play(B) the guitar when(C) she was six(D).
- 65) I'd(A) like telling(B) you something(C) about myself(D).
- 66) You have (A) an interview (B) with Mr. Lee tomorrow. Don't(C) forget meeting(D) him.
- 67) I don't regret to tell(A) her what(B) I thought, even(C) though it made her angry(D).
- 68) I tried writing(A) a letter but(B) my hands were too(C) cold to hold(D) a pen.
- 69) Lan enjoys to read(A) English newspapers(B) very much. She wants to(C) improve her English(D).
- 70) It's(A) no use telephone(B) Lan. She's(C) out now(D).
- 71) I was lonely(A) at first, but(B) after a short time(C) I got used to live alone(D).
- 72) Would(A) you mind telling(B) me how get(C) to the post office?
- 73) I'll(A) remember sending(B) you a postcard when(C) I reach(D) London.
- 74) I wanted to(A) stop buying(B) some presents, but(C) I didn't have enough(D) time.
- 75) Your windows need to clean(A). Would you like(B) me to do(C) them for(D) you?

UNIT 9

QUANTITATIVE WORDS
TỪ CHỈ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG



LÝ THUYẾT

- ❖ Từ chỉ số lượng lớn/nhỏ
- ❖ Từ chỉ số lượng toàn thể/bộ phận

I. TỪ CHỈ SỐ LUỢNG LỚN/NHỎ:

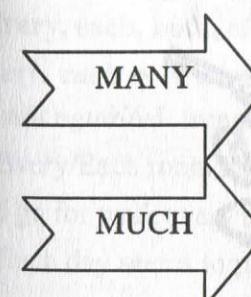
- 1) A lot of, lots of, many, much: (nhiều)

- *A lot of, lots of + danh từ số nhiều/danh từ không đếm được trong câu khẳng định.*

Eg: He has a lot of / lots of friends here.

We need a lot of / lots of time to learn a foreign language.

- *Many, much: dùng trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn.*



Danh từ số nhiều

Danh từ không đếm được

Eg: There aren't many people living here.

Does the newspaper have much information?

- *Many, much sau VERY, SO, TOO, AS:*

Eg: Very many crimes go unreported.

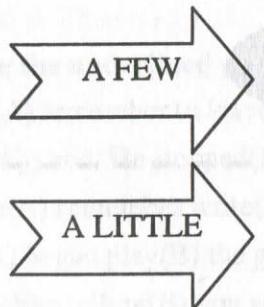
We had so many exercises to do.

There is too much salt in the soup.

He hasn't got as much patience as I thought.

2) A few, a little / few, little: (một vài, một ít / (rất) ít)

- A few, a little: dùng với nghĩa khẳng định

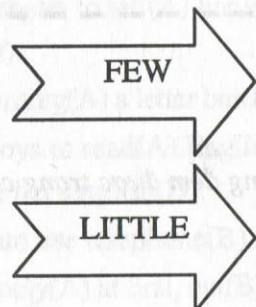


Danh từ số nhiều

Danh từ không đếm được

Eg: We've got a little bacon and a few eggs.

- Few, little: dùng với nghĩa phủ định



Danh từ số nhiều

Danh từ không đếm được

Eg: Few people can say that they always tell the truth.

There is little sugar in my coffee.



3) A large number of, a great deal of/a large amount of: (số lượng lớn)

- A large number of + danh từ số nhiều.

Eg: He has a large number of English books.

A number of + Ns + động từ số nhiều.

The number of + Ns + động từ số ít.

- A great deal of + danh từ không đếm được

Eg: A dishwasher uses a great deal of electricity.

II. TỪ CHỈ SỐ LUỢNG TOÀN THÊ/BỘ PHẬN:

1) All, most, some, any, no:

- VỚI DANH TỪ ĐẾM ĐƯỢC SỐ NHIỀU VÀ KHÔNG ĐẾM ĐƯỢC:

Eg: All rabbits love green food.

Most students love football.

I've just bought some books.

She didn't have any friends.

We have no Sundays free.

My brother likes all music.

Most pollution can be avoided.

Would you like some milk?

Have you got any wood?

I have no time to talk to you.

* SOME dùng trong câu khẳng định và câu nghi vấn.

ANY dùng trong câu phủ định và câu nghi vấn.

- VỚI CẤU TRÚC OF + THE/THES/THOSE/MY/HER/OUR... + N (ít/nhiều)

Eg: Most of my students like English.

Some of the food is delicious.

- VỚI CẤU TRÚC OF + ĐẠI TỪ TÂN NGỮ.

Eg: Some of you have made careless mistakes in your tests.

* KHÔNG DÙNG CẤU TRÚC NO OF + ...

2) Every, each, both, either, neither:

- Every, each + N đếm được số ít (hàm ý tất cả hoặc mỗi một người/vật trong nhóm)

Eg: Every/Each room has a number.

I go for walk every day. (mỗi ngày)

Each day seems to pass very slowly. (từng ngày)

- Each of + the/thes/thes/m/y/er/our... + N số nhiều

Eg: Each of the students has a personal computer.

- Each of + đại từ tân ngữ (us/you/them)

Eg: Each of us has our own desk.



- *Each* đứng một mình hoặc đi sau đại từ

Eg: They gave us each an English book.

Each has an English book.

- *Both, either, neither + N* (đi với hai người hoặc hai vật)

Eg: Both his parents are from Europe.

You can read either book. (one of two books)

Neither car is very economical to run. (2 cars)

- *Both, either, neither + OF + the/these/those/my/her/our... + N* số nhiều

Eg: Both of his parents are from Europe.

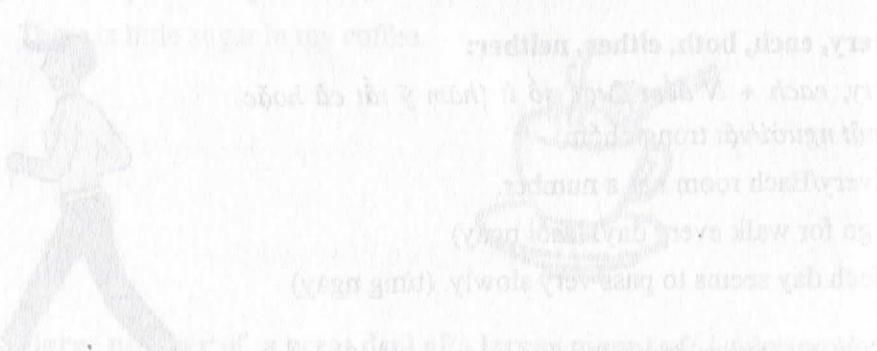
Neither of the cars is/are economical to run.

You can read either of the books.



- *Both, either, neither + OF + đại từ tân ngữ*.

Eg: Both of us were tired.



BÀI TẬP

Choose the best answer to complete each sentence

- 1) There wasn't ____ snow last night.
A. many B. much
C. few D. a large number of
- 2) ____ the students in my class enjoy taking part in social activities.
A. Most of B. Most
C. Many D. The number of
- 3) He's always busy. He has ____ time to relax.
A. much B. little C. a little D. plenty of
- 4) She put so ____ salt in the soup that she couldn't have it. It was too salty.
A. many B. little C. much D. a little
- 5) He made too ____ mistakes in his writing.
A. a few B. much C. many D. a number of
- 6) How ____ students are there in your class?
A. little B. few C. much D. many
- 7) I feel sorry for her. She has ____ friends.
A. many B. a few
C. few D. a great deal of
- 8) I spent ____ my spare time gardening last year.
A. most of B. most
C. many of D. a large number of
- 9) He doesn't have so ____ friends as I think.
A. much B. a great deal of
C. many D. a large number of
- 10) There was so ____ traffic that it took me an hour to get home.
A. a lot of B. little C. much D. many
- 11) Learning a language needs ____ patience.
A. a few B. much C. many D. little
- 12) ____ the shops in the city center close at 5.30.
A. Many B. Much of C. Some D. Most of

13) We had a boring holiday. ____ the time we lay on the beach.

- A. Most B. Much C. Most of D. Many of

14) With only ____ hope, Harry didn't know how to keep going another day.

- A. little B. a little C. few D. a few

15) How ____ money have you got?

- A. many B. much
C. a lot of D. a great deal of

16) There was very ____ food at the party but I didn't eat anything.

- A. little B. much C. many D. a lot of

17) I think ____ you are very tired after your long journey.

- A. many B. much C. many of D. much of

18) We didn't take ____ photographs when we were on holiday.

- A. much B. a lot of
C. many of D. a great deal of

19) There isn't ____ shampoo in the bathroom.

- A. any B. some C. little D. few

20) Would you like ____ tea?

- A. some B. many C. a few D. any

21) He had so ____ things to do.

- A. many B. a lot of C. much D. little

22) The mixture looks rather dry. Maybe you should add ____ water.

- A. a few B. few C. a little D. little

23) We're having a big party. We've invited ____ friends.

- A. a lot of B. much C. many of D. no

24) Could I try ____ wine?

- A. a little B. a few C. little D. few

25) Don't drink ____ wine. It's bad for your health.

- A. so much B. a few C. so many D. many

26) ____ my students are familiar with this kind of school activities.

- A. Most B. Most of C. A few D. Few

27) He had spent ____ time writing an essay about his childhood.

- A. a large number of
C. a few B. a great deal of
D. many

28) Peter has spent ____ time and money on stamp collecting.

- A. a few of
C. a great deal of
B. many of
D. a large number of

29) I have got ____ money.

- A. a few B. many of
C. some D. a small number of

30) How ____ furniture do you think there is?

- A. many B. much C. few D. a lot of

31) Why don't you take a break? Would you like ____ coffee?

- A. few B. some C. many D. much

32) He drank ____ wine last night and gets sick now.

- A. too many B. too much
C. few of D. a large number of

33) Give me ____ examples, please!

- A. a few B. a little C. few D. little

34) Is there ____ water in the glass?

- A. any B. some C. many D. lots of

35) Peter doesn't want ____ to do.

- A. something B. anything C. nothing D. everything

36) Can you speak French? – Yes, ____.

- A. a few B. few C. a little D. little

37) Thank you very ____ for your help.

- A. many B. much C. a lot of D. little

38) He is very rich. He has ____ money in the bank.

- A. a great deal of B. many C. a large number of D. few

39) She put too ____ sugar in the coffee. It became so sweet that I couldn't drink it.

- A. many B. much C. few D. little

40) I have got ____ homework to do.

- A. many B. few
C. a lot of D. a large number of

41) She has talked too ____.

- A. much B. many
C. few D. a great deal

- 42) He made very ____ mistakes.
- A. much B. many C. little D. a number of
- 43) They know ____ about what to do.
- A. many B. few C. little D. the number of
- 44) ____ children are ill-prepared for employment.
- A. Much B. Most C. A little D. Most of
- 45) Would you like ____ champagne to drink?
- A. some B. few C. a few D. many
- 46) When I studied Shakespeare, I thought his plays were ____ boring.
- A. many B. much C. few D. a few
- 47) ____ of the students are good today.
- A. Most B. Much C. A little D. Very
- 48) There were too ____ different nationalities in my class and we had to speak English.
- A. a lot of B. much C. some D. many
- 49) I don't know ____ about English literature.
- A. many B. much C. a few D. little
- 50) At the beginning, everybody spoke English very quickly, and I couldn't understand ____, but now things are easier.
- A. much B. many C. a great deal of D. a lot of

UNIT 10

PARTICIPE USED AS ADJECTIVE

PHÂN TỪ DÙNG NHƯ TÍNH TỪ

LÝ THUYẾT

I. Phân từ dùng như tính từ:

Tính từ tận cùng bằng

-ING	-ED	-ING	-ED
amazing	amazed	exciting	excited
amusing	amused	frightening	frightened
boring	bored	interesting	interested
confusing	confused	pleasing	pleased
depressing	depressed	relaxing	relaxed
deserving	deserved	satisfying	satisfied
disappointing	disappointed	shocking	shocked
distinguishing	distinguished	surprising	surprised
encouraging	encouraged	tiring	tired

1.1 Hình thức hiện tại phân từ (-ING):

Điển tả nhận thức của người nói về người/việc gì đó.

Eg: That film is interesting. (Bộ phim đó hay.)

(Người xem nhận thấy bộ phim hay.)

He is boring. He always talks about the same things.

(Hắn ta chán thật. Hắn luôn bàn về những thứ giống nhau.)

(Người nghe nhận thấy hắn ta chán.)

1.2 Hình thức quá khứ phân từ (-ED):

Điển tả cảm giác của người nói do người/việc gì đó đem lại.

Eg: I am confused about the question. (Tôi bị bối rối về câu hỏi.)

(Câu hỏi làm tôi bối rối.)

BÀI TẬP

Choose the best answer to complete each sentence

- 1) He is very (to interest/interesting/interested/interests) in my story.
- 2) The (encouraging / encouraged / encourage / to encourage) students work harder.
- 3) I didn't find the situation funny. It wasn't (amuse/amusing/amused/to amuse).
- 4) Sheila's party was pretty (bored/boring/bores/bore).
- 5) I went home early because I felt (boring/bore/bored/to bore).
- 6) When I read that novel, I felt (excite/ excited/ exciting/to excite).
- 7) His (amuse/amusing/amused/amuses) story causes great fun.
- 8) It's a (bored/boring/bore/to bore) work, so you'll get (tired/tiring/tire/to tire) of it.
- 9) He seems quite (satisfied/satisfy/satisfying/satisfies) with his new job.
- 10) This book is very (to interest/interesting/interested/interests).
- 11) I feel very (to interest/interesting/interested/interests) in this book.
- 12) Do you think the film is (excite/ excited/ exciting/to excite)?
- 13) The film wasn't as good as I expected. I were (disappointed / disappointing /disappoint / to disappoint) with it.
- 14) It was (surprised/surprise/surprising/ surprises) that he passed the exam.
- 15) My friend is going to the United States next month. She has never been there before. It will be an (excite/ excited/ exciting/to excite) experience for her.
- 16) Everybody was (surprised/surprise/surprising/surprises) that he passed the exam.
- 17) She has really learned very fast. She has made (astonish/astonishing/ astonished/ astonishes) progress.
- 18) He's one of the most (bored/boring/bore/to bore) men I have ever met. He never says anything interesting.
- 19) The football match was (excite/excited/exciting/to excite). I really enjoyed it.
- 20) Why do you always look so (bored/boring/bore/to bore)? Is your life really(bored/boring/bore/to bore)?

UNIT 11

RELATIVE CLAUSES MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ



LÝ THUYẾT

- 1) Mệnh đề quan hệ **hạn định**
- 2) Mệnh đề quan hệ **không hạn định**
- 3) Giới từ đặt trước mệnh đề tính từ (whom/ which)
- 4) Đại từ quan hệ **THAT**
- 5) of which/ of whom
- 6) Rút gọn mệnh đề tính từ thành **cụm tính từ**

I. MỆNH ĐỀ TÍNH TỪ:

Mệnh đề tính từ hay mệnh đề quan hệ được đặt sau danh từ nó phụ nghĩa, được nối bằng các từ quan hệ: who, whom, which, that, whose, where, that.

Eg: The woman who/that is standing over there is my sister.

I know the boy whom/that I spoke to.

She works for a company which/that makes cars.

The girl whose photo was in the paper lives in our street.

John found a cat whose leg/the leg of which was broken.

The hotel where we stayed wasn't very clean.

Tell me the reason why you are so sad.

Do you remember the day when we first met?

1) Mệnh đề quan hệ **hạn định**:

Dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước. Nếu bỏ đi mệnh đề chính sẽ không rõ nghĩa.

Eg: I saw the girl. She helped us last week.

→ I saw the girl who/that helped us last week.

2) Mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định:

Dùng để bỏ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước, là phần giải thích thêm. Nếu bỏ đi mệnh đề chính vẫn rõ nghĩa. Mệnh đề này thường được tách khỏi mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy “,”.

Ta dùng mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định khi:

- Trước danh từ quan hệ có các determiner như:
this/that/these/those/my/her/his/...
- Từ quan hệ là tên riêng hoặc danh từ riêng.

Eg: My father is a doctor. He is fifty years old.

→ My father, who is fifty years old, is a doctor.

Mr. Brown is a very nice teacher. We studied English with him.

→ Mr. Brown, who(m) we studied English with, is a very nice teacher.

* LUU Ý: KHÔNG dùng THAT trong mệnh đề này.

~~Mr Brown, that we studied English with, is a very nice teacher.~~

3) Giới từ đặt trước mệnh đề tính từ: (whom/ which)

Eg: The man speaks English very fast. I talked to him last night.

→ The man to whom I talked last night speaks English very fast.
The house is for sale. I was born in it.

→ The house in which I was born is for sale.

* LUU Ý: không dùng that, who sau giới từ.

The house in that I was born is for sale.

4) Đại từ quan hệ THAT:

4.1 Những trường hợp thường dùng THAT:

- Sau cụm từ quan hệ chỉ người và vật:

Eg: He told me the places and people that he had seen in London.

- Sau đại từ bất định:

Eg: I'll tell you something that is very interesting.

- Sau các tính từ so sánh nhất, ALL, EVERY, VERY, ONLY:

Eg: This is the most beautiful dress that I have.

All that is mine is yours.

You are the only person that can help us.



- Trong cấu trúc It + be + ... + that ... (chính là ...)

Eg: It is my friend that wrote this sentence.

4.2 Những trường hợp không dùng THAT:

- Trong mệnh đề tính từ không hạn định.
- Sau giới từ.

5) of which/ of whom:

Eg: Daisy has three brothers. All of them are teachers.

→ Daisy has three brothers, all of whom are teachers.

He asked me a lot of questions. I couldn't answer most of them.

→ He asked me a lot of questions, most of which I couldn't answer.

6) Rút gọn mệnh đề tính từ thành cụm tính từ:

6.1 Dùng V-ing hoặc bỏ BE:

Khi động từ chính trong mệnh đề tính từ ở thể chủ động hoặc là to be.

Eg: Those people who are taking photos over there come from Sweden.

→ Those people taking photos over there come from Sweden.

Fans who want to buy tickets started queuing early.

→ Fans wanting to buy tickets started queuing early.

The books which are on that shelf are mine.

→ The books on that shelf are mine.

6.2 Dùng V3/ed:

Khi động từ chính trong mệnh đề tính từ ở thể bị động.

- Eg: The books which were written by To Hoai are interesting.
- The books written by To Hoai are interesting.
- Most students who were punished last week are lazy.
- Most students punished last week are lazy.

6.3 Dùng câu trúc for sb + to V:

- Eg: This is the hotel where we can stay.
- This is the hotel (for us) to stay.



BÀI TẬP

A. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D.

- 1) Genghis Khan, _____ name means “very mighty ruler”, was a Mongol emperor in the Middle Ages.

A. whom B. whose C. who D. how
- 2) The children _____ sang at the Mayor's parade were from the local school.

A. whose B. where C. who D. whom
- 3) Galileo, _____ published works proving that the Earth revolves around the Sun, continued his scientific experiments even when he went deaf and blind.

A. when B. who C. where D. whose
- 4) The school programme _____ has been interrupted by revision tests requires a regular course study.

A. whose B. who C. what D. that
- 5) Credit _____ is given in this semester requires approximately three hours of classroom work.

A. which B. what C. when D. where
- 6) Two courses _____ have the same subjects are in different times.

A. that B. what C. when D. where
- 7) You may enroll our course by e-mail _____ can be faster than other registration forms.

A. who B. where C. which D. when
- 8) The girl _____ dress you admire has been working for an Egpo company since she left school.

A. who B. what C. whose D. whom
- 9) The young man _____ was released after the court was found innocent of all the charges against him.

A. who B. who he C. which D. whose
- 10) Is that the same film _____ we watched last year?

A. when B. which C. why D. who

- 11) The girl _____ I borrowed the dictionary asked me to use it carefully.
A. whose B. from whom C. from whose D. whom
- 12) The pupils _____ we took to the amusement park behaved themselves very well.
A. whose B. with whom C. whom D. which
- 13) Bournemouth, _____ we are going to visit next summer, is a real paradise for the retired.
A. that B. what C. which D. in which
- 14) Thatcher, _____ birthplace was above a shop in the small English town of Grantham, became Prime Minister of Britain four years after she had become the leader of the Conservative Party in 1975.
A. where B. whose C. in which D. which
- 15) First jeans, _____ became fashionable for women after they saw them in Vogue magazine, were made by two Americans, Jacob Davis and Levi Strauss.
A. that B. whose C. of which D. which
- 16) The first television picture _____ John Logie Baird transmitted on 25 November, 1905 was a boy _____ worked in the office next to Baird's workroom in London.
A. which / whom B. who / which
C. that / whose D. that / who
- 17) Felix Hoffman, a 29-year-old chemist _____ worked for the German company Bayer, invented the drug Aspirin in April 1879.
A. where B. whose C. whom D. who
- 18) Joyce Bews, _____ was born and grew up in Portsmouth on the south coast of England, _____ she still lives, was 100 last year.
A. that / in which B. who / where
C. that / where D. who / that
- 19) The big clock _____ used to strike the hours day and night was damaged during the war and has been silent ever since.
A. whose B. that is C. what D. which
- 20) The pollution _____ they were talking is getting worse.
A. that B. about which C. which D. whom

- 21) The engineer _____ our company relies is on holiday.
A. who B. on whom C. whose D. whom
- 22) The dam _____ they plan to build will cover acres of forest.
A. which B. to which C. whom D. where
- 23) He is a talented cricket player _____ abilities include fast bowling and powerful batting.
A. where B. whose C. whom D. of which
- 24) Eastern Rwanda is very different from the South-west, _____ monkeys, birds and orchids thrive in the high altitude primary forest.
A. when B. where C. which D. why
- 25) Wednesday is the day _____ a tour guide leads a tour around the town's historical places.
A. when B. which C. whose D. where
- 26) Robert Riva, an Italian _____ used to play for Cremonese, now coaches the Reigate under 11's football team.
A. when B. which C. where D. who
- 27) The town _____ the folk festival is taking place is usually a quiet resort.
A. when B. where C. whom D. which
- 28) As a celebrity _____ many children admire, it is important for her to act responsibly.
A. when B. where C. whom D. whose
- 29) We always hold a family barbecue in our garden on Independence Day, _____ was on a Tuesday this year.
A. what B. that C. when D. which
- 30) When I was at school, there was a girl in my class _____ skin was so sensitive that she couldn't expose her skin to the sun even with cream on.
A. where B. whose C. whom D. that
- 31) We'll row until the spot _____ the river bends and then we'll turn back.
A. where B. when C. whose D. which
- 32) On the days _____ I feel I need to reflect on the past and plan my future, I sit by the river and watch the swans swim past.
A. when B. where C. whose D. which

- 33) My mother's Elvis Presley tape, _____ she listened to every day, has broken in the music centre.
A. whose B. that C. where D. which
- 34) Unfortunately, the friend with _____ I intended to go on holiday to Side is ill, so I'll have to cancel my trip.
A. who B. whom C. where D. that
- 35) According to the research, the time at _____ most road accidents happen is early evening.
A. when B. which C. whose D. that
- 36) The new stadium, _____ will be completed next year, will seat 30,000 spectators.
A. what B. where C. when D. which
- 37) Blenheim Palace, _____ Churchill was born, is now open to the public.
A. when B. where C. which D. whose
- 38) Students _____ register for courses do not have any problems.
A. whom B. who C. what D. when
- 39) August 23rd is the last date _____ you may transfer to another course.
A. which B. on which C. why D. what
- 40) Our course needs some requirements _____ are listed here.
A. what B. when C. which D. where
- 41) Before coming to my office, please check the appointment _____ are listed in my official calendar.
A. that B. why C. when D. where
- 42) I never forget the time _____ my motorbike broke down in a very crowded street.
A. where B. what C. when D. in which
- 43) I couldn't remember the time _____ there was no internet.
A. what B. who C. which D. when
- 44) The restaurant _____ we had our dinner was the most expensive in this city.
A. where B. which C. when D. that
- 45) The top model about _____ I was telling you is on TV now.
A. who B. which C. that D. whom

- 46) Are you the student _____ mother called me yesterday?
A. whose B. who C. that D. when
- 47) Mary, _____ has only been in Japan for 3 months, speaks Japanese perfectly.
A. that B. whom C. which D. who
- 48) Who is your daughter? She is the child _____ has long, straight hair.
A. whose B. who C. which D. when
- 49) I don't think my ex-girl friend will remember the day _____ we saw each other for the first time.
A. which B. on which C. at which D. why
- 50) August is the month _____ I always give my birthday parties.
A. which B. in which C. what D. why
- 51) The purse _____ she had lost last week was found yesterday.
A. which B. what C. whose D. whom
- 52) The old lady _____ we were travelling told us her life story.
A. of whom B. with whom C. whose D. whom
- 53) She says the exam, _____ she took yesterday, was full of hard questions.
A. which B. of which C. whom D. of whose
- 54) I called my cousin, _____ is a mechanic, to fix my car, _____ was broken.
A. who/ which B. that/ all of which
C. who/ all of which D. who/ what
- 55) My only blue tie, _____ Richard wants to wear, is really an expensive one.
A. that B. whose C. which D. whom
- 56) This is the village _____ my family and I lived for six years.
A. in which B. that C. on which D. in where
- 57) She is a famous actress _____ everybody admires.
A. to whom B. whom C. to which D. of whom
- 58) The food _____ I like best of all is pie alamode.
A. who B. whose C. whom D. that

59) Justine, _____ parents live in Christchurch, has gone to Southampton.

- A. whom B. which C. to whom D. whose

60) The old building _____ was behind the local church fell down.

- A. of which B. which C. whose D. whom

61) They would like a teacher _____ native language is English.

- A. who B. whose C. whom D. that

62) The person with _____ she's been working is very friendly.

- A. who B. that C. which D. whom

63) My nephew _____ chose a lot of toys at the Toy World store for his father, _____ is my elder brother, paid a large amount of money.

- A. which / whose B. whom / who
C. which / who D. who / who

64) This is the time of month _____ a lot of retired people are waiting in queues in front of the banks for their pensions.

- A. when B. which C. whom D. where

65) The man _____ was in charge of the management didn't seem friendly to us at all.

- A. who B. whom C. where D. when

66) The physics teacher, _____ behaviour I don't like much, makes things harder for the students.

- A. who B. that C. whom D. whose

67) The farmer says he can't remember a time _____ the winter was as severe as it is this year.

- A. which B. when C. where D. whose

68) I think the Chinese are the people _____ habits are the most peculiar to us.

- A. which B. whom C. when D. whose

69) I saw several buildings, _____ were damaged by the earthquake.

- A. most of which B. most of them
C. all of whom D. some of whose

70) The people to _____ she was speaking didn't know German.

- A. who B. whose C. that D. whom

B. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Every student who majors in English are ready to participate in the orchard contest.

- A B C D

2. Do you know the reason when English men travel to the left?

- A B C D

3. She is the most beautiful woman whose I have ever met.

- A B C D

4. Mother's Day is the day when children show their love to their mother on.

- A B C D

5. The New Year Day is the day where all my family members gather and enjoy

- A B C

it together.

D

6. It is complicated because pollution is caused by things when benefit people.

- A B C D

7. The policeman must try to catch those men whom drive dangerously.

- A B C D

8. He was very surprised when he visited London, in that the drivers always

- A B C

drive on the right hand side of the street.

D

9. That is the man who he told me the bad news.

- A B C D

10. I don't know the reason on when Jonathan was sacked.

- A B C D

11. The singer about who I told you yesterday is coming here tomorrow.

- A B C D

12. The man whom helped you yesterday is a television reporter.

- A B C D

13. What is the name of the girl whom has just come in?

- A B C D

14. Do you know the reason when Englishmen travel on the left side of the streets?

- A B C D

15. If you want a particular book, the person to see is the librarian she is

- A B C D

wearing glasses.

16. I enjoyed the book that you told me to read it.

- A B C D

17. That commentator, his name I have forgotten, is very well-known.

- A B C D

18. Amelia Earhart, that was one of the pioneers in aviation, attempted to fly

- A B C

the world in 1937, but she and her plane mysteriously disappeared over the Pacific Ocean.

D

19. Sunday is a day where we expect.

- A B C D

20. Have you ever been to Da Lat when my father has a lovely house?

- A B C D

C. Choose one sentence that best rewrites the sentence given:

1. This man studies biology. What do you call him?

- A. What do you call a man who studies biology?
B. What do you call a man, who studies biology?
C. What do you call a man studies biology?
D. What do you call a man whom studies biology?

2. Hemingway developed a very concise writing style. His name is well-known throughout the world.

- A. Hemingway, his name is well-known throughout the world, developed a very concise writing style.
B. Hemingway, whose is name well-known throughout the world, developed a very concise writing style.
C. Hemingway, whose name is well-known throughout the world, developed a very concise writing style.
D. Hemingway, who developed a very concise writing style, his name is well-known throughout the world.

3. This is the battle field. The soldiers fought there.

- A. This is the battle field which the soldiers fought.
B. This is the battle field that the soldiers fought.
C. This is the battle field where the soldiers fought there.
D. This is the battle field where the soldiers fought.

4. He was born in 1983. There was a severe drought that year.

- A. He was born in 1983 when there was a severe drought.
B. He was born in 1983 when was there a severe drought
C. When there was a severe drought in 1983 he was born.
D. He was born in 1983, there was a severe drought when

5. John Montagu was an English Earl. He invented the sandwich.

- A. John Montagu, whose invented the sandwich, was an English Earl.
B. John Montagu, who invented the sandwich, was an English Earl.
C. John Montagu, that invented the sandwich, was an English Earl.
D. John Montagu, invented the sandwich, was an English Earl.

6. Flies, which come mostly in the summer, carry diseases.

- A. Flies, to come mostly in the summer, carry diseases.
B. Flies, come mostly in the summer, carry diseases.
C. Flies, coming mostly in the summer, carry diseases.
D. Flies, that come mostly in the summer, carry diseases.

7. There was a candle which burnt in the room.

- A. There was a candle burning in the room.
B. There was a candle burnt in the room.
C. There was a candle to burn in the room.
D. There was a candle to be burnt in the room.

8. I see a boy who is running in the street.

- A. I see a boy running in the street.
B. I see a boy to running in the street.
C. I see a boy to run in the street.
D. None is correct.

9. He drew from the bag a watch which had been given for his birthday.

- A. He drew from the bag a watch given for his birthday.
B. He drew from the bag a watch been given for his birthday.

C. He drew from the bag a watch had given for his birthday.

D. He drew from the bag a watch had been given for his birthday.

10. *One of the drivers who was brought by Steward came over to me.*

A. One of the drivers that were brought by Steward came over to me.

B. One of the drivers was brought by Steward came over to me.

C. One of the drivers brought by Steward came over to me.

D. One of the drivers bring by Steward came over to me.

D. Change adjective clauses to phrases (V-ing, V3 or To V).

1. There is someone who is knocking at the door.

.....

2. Passengers who travel on planes shouldn't smoke.

.....

3. The photographs which were taken by my son were extraordinary.

.....

4. What can you do about a dog which is barking all night?

.....

5. Is there any good place where we can stay tonight?

.....

6. We have an apartment which over looks the park.

.....

7. The last person who leaves the room must turn off the light.

.....

8. Trains which leave from this station take an hour to get to London.

.....

9. The experiment which was conducted at the university of Chicago was successful.

.....

10. The ideas that are presented in that book are interesting.

.....

E. Join these pairs of sentences, using Relative Pronouns or Adverbs.

Put the comma(s) when necessary.

1. I have to find the man. I accidentally picked up his umbrella this morning.

.....

2. Monday is the day. We will come then.

.....

3. I'll never forget the day. I met you on that day.

.....

4. The town was small. I grew up there.

.....

5. 1960 was the year. The revolution took place in that year.

.....

6. I apologized to the woman. I spilled her coffee.

.....

7. They're the postcards. They arrived yesterday.

.....

8. The children sang aloud all night. This kept their parents awake.

.....

9. Maria is studying in New York City. The city is called the "Big Apple".

.....

10. In the room, we saw a lot of children and pets. They sang and danced happily.

.....

LÝ THUYẾT



- I. Động từ tường thuật ở thì hiện tại hoặc tương lai
- II. Động từ tường thuật ở thì quá khứ
- III. Các dạng câu tường thuật

I. ĐỘNG TỪ TƯỜNG THUẬT Ở THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOẶC TƯƠNG LAI

Nếu động từ tường thuật ở thì HIỆN TẠI hoặc TƯƠNG LAI, ta chỉ đổi NGÔI như sau:

- 1) Đổi ngôi thứ NHẤT phù hợp với CHỦ TỪ trong mệnh đề chính
- 2) Đổi ngôi thứ HAI phù hợp với TÚC TỪ trong mệnh đề chính
- 3) Ngôi thứ BA không đổi

Eg: He says to me, "I and you will go with her father tomorrow."

→ He tells me (that) he and I will go with her father tomorrow.

* Chú ý: say to → tell

II. ĐỘNG TỪ TƯỜNG THUẬT Ở THÌ QUÁ KHỨ:

Nếu động từ tường thuật ở thì quá khứ, ta đổi ba yếu tố là ngôi, thì của động từ và trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn.

1) Ngôi: (như trên)

2) Thời của động từ:

Vs/es → V2/ed

V2/ed → had + V3/ed

can → could

may → might

will → would

must → had to

shall → should

3) Trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn:

today	→ that day	tonight	→ that night
now	→ then	ago	→ before
yesterday	→ the day before	last week	→ the week before
next week	→ the week after	tomorrow	→ the day after
this	→ that	these	→ those
here	→ there		

Eg: She said to me, "I met your brother yesterday."

→ She told me that she had met my brother the day before.

III. CÁC DẠNG CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT:

1) Câu khẳng định và phủ định:

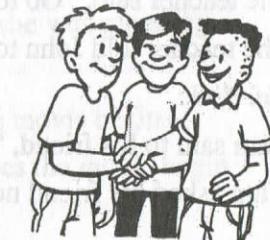
Động từ tường thuật thường là said/told.

Eg1: He said, "I have seen her today."

→ He said (that) he had seen her that day.

Eg2: The teacher said to Peter, "The prize was not given to you."

→ The teacher told Peter (that) the prize had not been given to him.



Chú ý: said to → told

2) Câu hỏi:

Động từ tường thuật thường là asked/wondered/wanted to know (hỏi/tự hỏi/muốn biết).

2.1 Y/N (yes/no):

Eg1: She asked me, "Do you like him?"

→ She asked me if I liked him.

Eg2: He said, "Can you speak English, Nam?"

→ He asked Nam whether he could speak English.



2.2 WH-:

Eg1: He said, "What is her name?"

→ He asked what her name was.

Eg2: She said to him, "Where do you live?"

→ She asked him where he lived.

10. I wondered _____ the right thing.

- A. if I am doing
- B. was I doing
- C. am I doing
- D. whether I was doing

11. Charlie _____ that his father was in hospital.

- A. told me
- B. told to me
- C. said me
- D. asked me

12. Mr Brown said, "I watched TV last night."

→ Mr Brown said that he _____ TV the night before.

- A. was watching
- B. watched
- C. had watched
- D. has watched

13. The teacher said Columbus _____ America in 1492.

- A. discovered
- B. had discovered
- C. was discovering
- D. would discover

14. "Please don't tell anyone what happened," Ann said to me.

- A. Ann said to me please don't tell anyone what happened.
- B. Ann told me didn't tell anyone what had happened.
- C. Ann said me not to tell anyone what happened.
- D. Ann told me not to tell anyone what had happened.

15. "Would you like to go to the cinema with me tonight?" he said.

- A. He invited me to go to the cinema with him that night.
- B. He offered me to go to the cinema with him tonight.
- C. He asked me if I'd like to go to the cinema with him tonight.
- D. He would like me to go to the cinema with him this night.

16. "Remember to pick me up at 6 o'clock tomorrow afternoon," she said.

- A. She told me to remember to pick her up at 6 o'clock tomorrow afternoon.
- B. She reminded me to pick her up at 6 o'clock the following afternoon.
- C. She reminded me to remember to pick her up at 6 o'clock the next afternoon.
- D. She told me to pick her up at 6 o'clock the next day afternoon.

17. "Let's have a picnic next Saturday," Julia said.

- A. Julia said that let's have a picnic the next Saturday.
- B. Julia suggested having a picnic the following Saturday.
- C. Julia advised how about having a picnic the next Saturday.
- D. Julia told that why they didn't have a picnic next Saturday.

18. "If I were you, I'd tell him the truth," she said to me.

- A. She said to me that if I were you, I'd tell him the truth.
- B. She will tell him the truth if she is me.
- C. She suggested to tell him the truth if she were me.
- D. She advised me to tell him the truth.

19. "Stay in bed for a few days," the doctor said to him.

- A. The doctor said to him stay in bed for a few days.
- B. The doctor said him to stay in bed for a few days.
- C. The doctor told him to stay in bed for a few days.
- D. The doctor told to him stay in bed for a few days.

20. "Why don't you have your room repainted?" said Viet to Nam.

- A. Viet suggested that Nam should have his room repainted.
- B. Viet suggested having Nam's room repainted.
- C. Viet asked Nam why you didn't have your room repainted.
- D. Viet wanted to know why Nam doesn't have his room repainted.

21. Mary said, "I want to give up my job." → Mary said that

- A. she wants to give up her job.
- C. she wanted to give up my job.
- B. I wanted to give up her job.
- D. she wanted to give up her job.

22. His wife said to him, "write to me as often as you can"

- A. His wife told him to write to her as often as he can.
- B. His wife told him to write to her as often as he could.
- C. His wife told him writing to her as often as he can.
- D. His wife told to him to write to her as often as he could.

23. Mary said, "I have not seen Peter since last month."

- A. Mary said she has not seen Peter since the previous month.
- B. Mary said she had not seen Peter since the previous month.
- C. Mary said she was not seen Peter since the previous month.
- D. Mary said she doesn't see Peter since the previous month.

24. "I want to go on holiday but I don't know where to go."

→ Tom said that

- A. he wanted to go on holiday but he doesn't know where to go.
- B. he wants to go on holiday but he didn't know where to go.
- C. he wanted to go on holiday but he didn't know where to go.
- D. I wanted to go on holiday but I didn't know where to go.

25. *Mary said : " What will you do this evening, John ? "*

- A. Mary asked John what would he do that evening.
- B. Mary asked John what John did that evening.
- C. Mary wanted to know what she and John would do that evening.
- D. Mary wanted to know what John would do that evening.

26. *He said to them, "Don't tell me such a nonsense!"*

- A. He told them not to tell him such a nonsense.
- B. He told them to tell him such a nonsense.
- C. He told them not to tell them such a nonsense.
- D. He told them to tell them such a nonsense.

27. *"If I were you. Bill, I'd buy the house, " Stephen said.*

- A. Stephen suggested Bill to buy the house.
- B. Stephen advised Bill to buy the house.
- C. Stephen promised Bill that he would buy the house.
- D. Stephen forced Bill to buy the house.

28. *"Don't forget to feed the chicken twice a day."*

- A. He said don't forget to feed the chicken twice a day.
- B. He told not to forget to feed the chicken twice a day.
- C. He reminded me to feed the chicken twice a day.
- D. He suggested me to feed the chicken twice a day

29. *"Never borrow money from friends," my father said.*

- A. My father told me never to borrow money from friends.
- B. My father said to me never borrow money from friends.
- C. My father suggested me never borrowing money from friends.
- D. My father advised me not borrow money from friends

30. *"Please don't leave until I come back," Sarah said.*

- A. Sarah told us do not leave until she comes back.
- B. Sarah asked us do not leave until she came back.
- C. Sarah told us not to leave until she came back.
- D. Sarah said to us not to leave until she comes back

31. *"Could you lend me your pen?" Tom said to Jerry.*

- A. Tom asked Jerry to lend him her pen.
- B. Tom asked to lend Jerry's pen.
- C. Tom asked if Jerry could lend you her pen.
- D. Tom asked if Jerry could lend her his pen.

32. *"Right. I'll take the brown pair. "Andrew said.*

- A. Andrew promised to take the brown pair.
- B. Andrew wanted to take the brown pair.
- C. Andrew agreed to take the brown pair.
- D. Andrew asked to take the brown pair.

33. *"I will ring you up after I get home." Peter said to Mary.*

- A. Peter promised to give Mary a wedding ring after he got home.
- B. Peter asked Mary to pay him a visit after he' got home.
- C. Peter promised to visit Mary after he got home.
- D. Peter promised to telephone Mary after he got home.

34. *"I've been playing tennis a lot lately," John said.*

- A. John said that I have been playing tennis a lot lately.
- B. John said that he has been playing tennis a lot lately.
- C. John said that he had been playing tennis a lot lately.
- D. John said that she had been playing tennis a lot lately.

35. *"Tom had an accident last week, but he wasn't injured," said Mary.*

- A. Mary said Tom had an accident last week but he wasn't injured.
- B. Mary said Tom had had an accident last week but he wasn't injured.
- C. Mary said Tom had an accident the last week but he hadn't been injured.
- D. Mary said Tom had had an accident the week before but he hadn't been injured.

36. *"I don't know what Fred is doing," said my sister.*

- A. My sister said that she didn't know what Fred was doing.
- B. My sister said she doesn't know what Fred is doing.
- C. My sister said that I don't know what Fred is doing.
- D. My sister said that she hasn't known what Fred was doing

37. *I suggested that he should paint the house light blue.*

- A. "Shall we painted the house light blue?" I said to him.
- B. "How about to paint the house light blue?" I said to him.
- C. "Let's paint the house light blue," I said to him.
- D. "Why don't you paint the house light blue?" I said to him.

38. *He invited me to have dinner with him.*

- A. "Would you like to have dinner with me?" he said.
- B. "Do you like having dinner with me?" he said.
- C. "Would you like dinner with me?" said he.
- D. "Will you like to have dinner with me?" said he.

39. *They wanted to know where I came from.*

- A. "We want to know where do you come from," they said.
- B. "Where did you come from?" they asked.
- C. "Where do you come from?" asked they.
- D. "We wanted to know where I came from," they said.

40. *He reminded me to buy him some stamps.*

- A. "Don't forget to buy me some stamps," he said.
- B. "Remember buying me some stamps," said he.
- C. "Remind to buy me some stamps," said he.
- D. "Don't deny buying me some stamps," he said.

41. *"I'll definitely return it to you tomorrow," John said.*

- A. John said that he'll return it to me the next day.
- B. John promised to return it to me the next day.
- C. John told that he'll return it to me the next day.
- D. John decided to return it to me next day.

42. *"Shall I carry your suitcase, Mary?" said Peter.*

- A. Peter promised to carry Mary's suitcase.
- B. Peter decided to carry Mary's suitcase.
- C. Peter wanted to carry Mary's suitcase.
- D. Peter offered to carry Mary's suitcase

43. *"I'll never make that mistake again.", Robert said.*

→ Robert promised ____ that mistake again.

- A. no making
- B. not made
- C. never to make
- D. never made

44. *'I'd like you to tell me the truth,' Lara said.*

→ Lana wanted _____ her the truth.

- A. I to tell
- B. me to tell
- C. me telling
- D. I telling

45. *'You should quit smoking and eat more vegetable,' said the doctor.*

→ The doctor advised him _____ more vegetable.

- A. to quit smoking and eat
- B. quit smoking and eat
- C. to quit smoking and to eating
- D. quitting smoking and eating

46. *'Please come and join our party tonight', said Lana.*

→ Lana invited us _____.

- A. to come and join our party tonight
- B. to their party that night
- C. to come and join their party that night
- D. to our party tonight

47. *"Be aware of the dog," said Tom.*

→ Tom warned us _____.

- A. to be aware of the dog
- B. being aware of the dog
- C. we should be aware of the dog
- D. aware of the dog

48. *"I'm really sorry for being late again," said Ann.*

- A. I felt sorry for Ann's being late again.
- B. Ann was sorry for my being late again.
- C. Ann Egcused for my being late again.
- D. Ann apologized for being late again.

49. *"How about spending the day at the beach" said Tom.*

- A. Tom said he wanted to spend the day at the beach.
- B. Tom suggested spending the day at the beach.
- C. Tom insisted on spending the day at the beach.
- D. Tom advised us to spend the day at the beach.

50. "I am sorry I didn't wait for you," Mary said to John.

- A. Mary apologized for not waiting for John.
- B. Mary insisted on not waiting for John.
- C. Mary sorry for not waiting for John.
- D. Mary denied not waiting for John.

51. "You mustn't call the police," he said to his wife.

- A. He accused his wife of calling the police.
- B. He warned his wife calling the police.
- C. He stopped his wife from calling the police.
- D. He apologized his wife for calling the police.

52. "Please don't leave until I come back," Sarah said.

- A. Sarah told us do not leave until she comes back.
- B. Sarah asked us do not leave until she came back.
- C. Sarah told us not to leave until she came back.
- D. Sarah said to us not to leave until she comes back.

53. "Let's go to Ba Vi next weekend", Mai said.

- A. Mai insisted on going to Ba Vi next weekend.
- B. Mai suggested going to Ba Vi the next weekend
- C. Mai wanted to go to Ba Vi the next weekend.
- D. Mai dreamed of going to Ba Vi the next weekend.

54. "It was so kind of you to give me the flowers," Lan said to Minh.

- A. Lan thanked Minh to give her the flowers.
- B. Lan thanked Minh to be kind to give her the flowers.
- C. Lan thanked Minh on giving her the flowers.
- D. Lan thanked Minh for giving her the flowers.

55. "It's me. I made your dress dirty," Jane said to Ann.

- A. Jane accused Ann of making her dress dirty.
- B. Ann prevented Jane from making her dress dirty.
- C. Jane denied making Ann's dress dirty.
- D. Jane admitted making Ann's dress dirty.

56. "Don't go near that deserted house," Tuan said to me.

- A. Tuan advised me not going near that deserted house.
- B. Tuan insisted me going near that deserted house.

C. Tuan warned me against going near that deserted house.

D. Tuan suggested me not to going near that deserted house.

57. "How beautiful the dress you have just bought is!" Peter said to Mary.

- A. Peter promised to buy Mary a beautiful dress.
- B. Peter said thanks to Mary for her beautiful dress.
- C. Peter complimented Mary on her beautiful dress.
- D. Peter asked Mary how she had just bought her beautiful dress.

58. "Hello, Mary!" Peter said, " _____ "

- A. Peter said hello Mary.
- B. Peter said Mary hello.
- C. Peter told Mary hello
- D. Peter greeted Mary.

59. "Why don't you ask the teacher for help?" Peter asked me.

- A. Peter advised me to ask the teacher for help.
- B. Peter recommended me not to ask the teacher for help.
- C. Peter told me the reason why I did not ask the teacher for help.
- D. Peter suggested that he should ask the teacher for help.

60. He asked me _____ Robert and I said I did not know _____.

- A. that did I know / who were Robert
- B. that I knew / who Robert were
- C. if I knew / who Robert was
- D. whether I knew / who was Robert

61. The mother asked her son _____.

- A. where he has been
- B. where he had been
- C. where has he been
- D. where had he been

62. Martin asked me _____.

- A. how is my father
- B. how my father is
- C. how was my father
- D. how my father was

63. The host asked Peter _____ tea or coffee.

- A. whether he preferred
- B. that he preferred
- C. did he prefer
- D. if he prefers

64. "You damaged my bicycle, Tom!" said John.

- A. John accused to Tom for damaging his bicycle.
- B. John accused with Tom to have damaged his bicycle.
- C. John accused Tom of damaging his bicycle.
- D. John accused Tom to damage his bicycle.

65. "Don't walk on the grass" the gardener said to us.

- A. The gardener said to us don't walk on the grass.
- B. The gardener told us not to walk on the grass.
- C. The gardener suggested us not to walk on the grass.
- D. The gardener advised us not to walk on the grass.

66. John often says he _____ boxing because it _____ a cruel sport.

- A. does not like / is
- B. did not like / were
- C. not liked / had been
- D. had not liked / was

67. He asked _____ him some money.

- A. her to lend
- B. her lending
- C. she has lent
- D. she lends

68. Andrew told me that they _____ fish two _____ days.

- A. have not eaten / ago
- B. had not eaten / previous
- C. did not eat / before
- D. would not eat / last

69. "Can I bring a friend to the party?" Nancy wanted to know.

- A. Nancy asked if she could bring a friend to the party.
- B. Nancy wanted to ask someone to bring her friend to the party.
- C. Nancy knew that bring a friend to the party was good.
- D. Nancy wanted to invite her friend out and to the party.

70. She asked me, "How high was the church?"

- A. She asked me how high the church was.
- B. She asked me how high is the church.
- C. She asked me how high the church had been.
- D. She asked me how the church had been.

B. Change each of the following sentences into reported speech.

1) John said, "I want to attend a famous university."

→ John said

2) "I'm looking for the book you gave me last week," Mary said to Peter.

→ Mary told Peter

3) Alfred said to John, "I did not promise to send you a telegram."

→ Alfred

4) "I will get myself a drink," she said.

→ She said

5) "I cannot drive them home," he said.

→ He said

6) "Peter, do you prefer tea or coffee?" she said.

→ She

7) "The film began at seven o'clock," he said.

→ He said

8) The father said, "I was on a business trip the whole day yesterday."

→ The father

9) "My brother will get married next month," James said.

→ James

10) Henry said to his mother, "Come and spend a week with us."

→ Henry told

11) He said to me, "Keep a seat for me in the lecture hall."

→ He

12) Mike said to Henry, "Give me my book back, please."

→ Mike

13) "Don't play on the grass, boys," she said.

→ She

14) He said, "Don't go too far."

→ He

15) "Don't make so much noise," he said.

→ He

16) The mother said to her son, "Don't move, please."

→ The mother

17) My sister said to me, "Don't open the window."

→ My sister

18) Jane said to Williams, "Will you be free tomorrow?"

→ Jane asked

- 19) Fred asked the postman, "Are there any letters today?"
 → Fred
- 20) Richard asked the Browns, "What are you going enter?"
 → Richard
- 21) "I was very tired," she said.
 → She said
- 22) "Be careful, Ben," she said.
 → She told Ben
- 23) "I will get myself a drink," she says.
 → She says
- 24) "Why haven't you phoned me?" he asked me.
 → He wondered
- 25) "I cannot drive them home," he said.
 → He said
- 26) "Peter, do you prefer tea or coffee?" she says.
 → She asks Peter
- 27) "Where did you spend your holidays last year?" she asked me.
 → She asked me
- 28) He said, "Don't go too far."
 → He advised her
- 29) "Have you been shopping?" he asked us.
 → He wanted to know
- 30) "Don't make so much noise," he says.
 → He asks us

UNIT 13 | COMPARISONS SO SÁNH

LÝ THUYẾT



- ❖ So sánh bằng
- ❖ So sánh hơn
- ❖ So sánh nhất
- ❖ Các dạng so sánh khác
- ❖ Quy tắc thêm ER và EST đối với tính từ/trạng từ ngắn

I. SO SÁNH BẰNG:

- 1) Câu khẳng định: **as + adj/adv + as (bằng/như)**
 Eg: I'm as tall as Tom.

John works as hard as his father.

- 2) Câu phủ định: **not as/so + adj/adv + as (không bằng/như)**

Eg: This watch is not as/so expensive as mine. (= my watch)
 She doesn't sing as/so well as her sister.



* LUU Y:

- Khi so sánh danh từ với nghĩa giống/bằng hay không giống/không bằng, ta có thể dùng câu trúc:

(not) + the same + (noun) + as

Eg: He is the same age as I am.

Ann's salary isn't the same as Jane's.

- Có thể dùng less + adj/adv + than (kém ... hon) thay cho not as/so + adj/adv + as

Eg: This watch is less expensive than mine.

She sings less well than her sister.

- Khi nói gấp bao nhiêu lần, ta dùng câu trúc ... times as + adj/adv + as.

Eg: Their house is three times as big as ours.

II. SO SÁNH HƠN:

1) Tính từ/trạng từ ngắn: adj/adv + ER + than

Tính từ/trạng từ ngắn là từ có một vần hay hai vần tận cùng bằng "y".

fast → faster

cold → colder

thick → thicker

lucky → luckier

happy → happier

dry → drier ...

Eg: John is stronger than his brother.

This athlete runs faster than that one.



2) Tính từ/trạng từ dài: more + adj/adv + than

Tính từ/trạng từ dài là từ có hai vần trở lên.

modern, patient, difficult, fluently, beautifully, ...

Eg: This problem is more difficult than we thought.

He speaks English more fluently than his friend.

III. SO SÁNH NHẤT:

1) Tính từ/trạng từ ngắn:

cold → the coldest

the + adj/adv + est

fast → the fastest

thick → the thickest

lucky → the luckiest

happy → the happiest

Eg: Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.

2) Tính từ/trạng từ dài:

the + most + adj/adv

Eg: She is the most beautiful girl in the class.

LUU Y:

- Ta có thể dùng the least để chỉ mức độ kém ... nhất.

Eg: This story is the least interesting of all.

- Tính từ/trạng từ bất qui tắc.

Tính từ/trạng từ	So sánh hơn	So sánh nhất
good/well (tốt)	better	the best
bad/badly (xấu, dở)	worse	the worst
far (xa)	farther/further	the farthest/furthest
little (ít)	less	the least
many/much (nhiều)	more	the most

IV. CÁC DẠNG SO SÁNH KHÁC:

1) Càng ngày càng ...

- Tính từ/trạng từ ngắn: adj/adv + er and adj/adv + er

Eg: Betty is younger and younger.

He runs faster and faster.

- Tính từ/trạng từ dài: more and more + adj/adv

Eg: My wife is more and more beautiful.

They work more and more carefully.

2) Càng ... càng ...

- The more + S + V, the more + S + V

Eg: The more I know him, the more I like him.

- The + SS hơn + S + V, the + SS hơn + S + V

Eg: The older he gets, the weaker he is.

The more beautiful she is, the more miserable her parents are.

(Cô ta càng đẹp thì cha mẹ cô ta càng khổ.)

- The more + S + V, the adj + ER + S + V

Eg: The more he works, the richer he is.

- The adj + ER + S + V, the more + S + V

Eg: The hotter it is, the more tired I feel.

V. QUY TẮC THÊM ER VÀ EST ĐỐI VỚI TÍNH TỪ/TRẠNG TỪ NGẮN:

1) Adj tận cùng bằng “e”

Eg: large → larger → largest

2) Adj tận cùng bằng phụ âm “y”

easy → easier → easiest

3) Adj có một âm tiết và có nguyên âm đứng giữa 2 phụ âm: gấp đôi phụ âm:

Eg: hot → hotter → hottest

BÀI TẬP

A. Fill in the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives.

Example: new - _____ - _____

Answer: new - **newer** - **newest**

1. old _____
2. bad _____
3. difficult _____
4. large _____
5. good _____
6. big _____
7. easy _____
8. much _____
9. little _____
10. interesting _____

B. Use either as ... as or not as ... as in the sentences below.

Example: Ben Nevis is _____ as Mont Blanc (**not/high**).

Answer: Ben Nevis is **not as high as** Mont Blanc.

- 1) The blue car is _____ the red car. (**fast**)
- 2) Peter is _____ Fred. (**not/tall**)
- 3) The violin is _____ the cello. (**not/low**)
- 4) This copy is _____ the other one. (**bad**)
- 5) Oliver is _____ Peter. (**optimistic**)
- 6) Today it's _____ yesterday. (**not/windy**)
- 7) The tomato soup was _____ the mushroom soup. (**delicious**)
- 8) Grapefruit juice is _____ lemonade. (**not/sweet**)
- 9) Nick is _____ Kevin. (**brave**)
- 10) Silver is _____ gold. (**not/heavy**)

C. Put in the adjective from the first sentence into the second sentence in its correct form (comparative or superlative).

Example: I have a fast car, but my friend has a _____ car.

Answer: I have a **fast** car, but my friend has a **faster** car.

- 1) My father is heavy. My uncle is much _____ than my father.
- 2) The test in Geography was easy, but the test in Biology was _____.
- 3) Florida is sunny. Do you know the _____ place in the USA?
- 4) Stan is a successful sportsman, but his sister is _____ than Stan.
- 5) My mother has a soft voice, but my teacher's voice is _____ than my mother's.
- 6) Amy has a beautiful baby, but my daughter has the _____ baby on earth.
- 7) I live in a large family, but my grandfather lived in a _____ family.
- 8) We have only little time for this exercise, but in the examination we'll have even _____ time.
- 9) Lucy is clever, but Carol is _____ than Lucy.
- 10) Have you visited the old castle? It was the _____ castle we visited during our holidays.

D. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

1. Ms. Jones isn't as nice Ms. Smith.
A. as B. for C. like D. to
2. The rooms in Graduate Towers are Patterson Hall.
A. larger than B. larger than that of
C. larger than those in D. larger than in
3. Although she is very popular, she is not her sister.
A. pretty as B. as pretty
C. prettier than D. most pretty than
4. Tuition at an American university runs six thousand dollars a semester.
A. so high as B. as high to
C. as high as D. as high than
5. Everyone looks much today than they did yesterday.
A. happy B. more happily
C. happily D. happier

6. Mr. Brown receives a salary than anyone else in the company.
A. big B. more bigger C. bigger D. the bigger
7. The Boeing 747 is twice the Boeing 707.
A. bigger than B. as bigger as
C. as big as D. more bigger than
8. "Do you know that beautiful lady over there?" "Yes, that's Wanida. She's in her group."
A. more beautiful than any girl B. more beautiful than any other girl
C. so beautiful as other girl D. beautiful more than another girl
9. My young brother grew very quickly and soon he was my mother.
A. more big than B. so big than
C. as big as D. too big than
10. He is not tall as his father.
A. the B. as C. than D. more
11. John's grades are than his sister's.
A. higher B. more high C. high D. the highest
12. Deana is the of the three sisters.
A. most short B. shorter C. shortest D. more short
13. She speaks English as as her friend does.
A. good B. well C. better D. the best
14. Of the three shirts, this one is the
A. prettier B. most prettiest C. prettiest D. most pretty
15. The baby's illness is than we thought at first.
A. bad B. worst C. worse D. badly
16. Today is the day of the month.
A. hot B. hotter C. hottest D. hottest than
17. He works more than I.
A. slow B. slowly C. slowest D. most slowly
18. My book is as as yours.
A. good B. well C. better D. the best

19. I love you than I can say.

- A. much B. many C. more D. the most

20. It's to go by bus than by car.

- A. cheaper B. cheapest
C. more cheap D. more cheaper

21. That house is one on the street.

- A. oldest B. the oldest C. old D. older

22. This hotel must be than the small one next door.

- A. expensive B. more expensive
C. the most expensive D. the more expensive

23. An orange is than a plum

- A. more big B. more bigger
C. bigger D. the biggest

24. What is the thing you have ever done?

- A. more difficult B. most difficult
C. difficulty D. difficult than

25. This river is than that river.

- A. narrow B. narrowest
C. narrower D. most narrow

26. The test is not difficult it was last month.

- A. as / as B. so / as
C. more / as D. A and B

27. Peter usually drives Mary.

- A. more fast B. more fast than
C. faster than D. B and C

28. My brother sang of all the pupils of the group.

- A. more beautifully B. the most beautifully
C. less beautifully D. most beautifully

29. At 3,810 meters above sea level in Bolivia stands Lake Titicaca,

- in the world.
A. the highest large lake B. largest high lake
C. high largest lake D. the high largest lake

30. The hotel was any one we had stayed at before.

- A. more expensive than B. more expensive as
C. most expensive than D. better expensive than

31. A: It's a long way from Britain, isn't it?

- B: Yes, but it isn't as as Hong Kong.
A. far B. farther
C. farthest D. further

32. A: It's hot there, isn't it? B: It's very during the day.

- A. hot B. hotter
C. hottest D. hotter than

33. Japan is usually Saudi Arabia in summer.

- A. hot than B. as hot so
C. cooler than D. so hot as

34. apples are grown in Washington State.

- A. Best B. The better
C. The best D. The most good

35. She is now she used to.

- A. more busy than B. busier than
C. more busier than D. busier that

36. This play is than the one we saw last week.

- A. as good B. good
C. more good D. better

37. Of Charles Dickens' novels, Great expectations is perhaps to many readers.

- A. the most satisfying one B. most satisfying one
C. more than satisfying one D. the more satisfying than

38. He says: "These neighbors are the others."

- A. friendlier than B. friendly than
C. friendlier as D. more friendly than

39. The Mississippi is The Thames.

- A. the longer than B. longer than
C. the longest than D. more long than

40. tools are screwdrivers, hammers and saws.
A. The usefulness B. The most useful
C. The more useful
41. Some computers can work 500,000 times any person can.
A. faster than B. fast than
C. fatter than D. more fast than
42. This pen is the other two pens.
A. more expensive as B. the most expensive of
C. more expensive than D. as expensive than
43. The exam was quite easy; we expected.
A. more easy that B. more easy than
C. easier than D. easier as
44. The story was really boring. It was I've ever read.
A. most boring story B. the more boring story
C. the story more boring D. the most boring story
45. The picture he gave you is more valuable the one he gave me.
A. over B. above
C. to D. than
46. Australia's one of the places in the world for holiday.
A. good B. the best C. better D. most good
47. Nam runs than any boy in his class.
A. faster B. more faster C. the fastest D. fastest
48. The Sears Tower is building in Chicago.
A. taller B. the more tall
C. the tallest D. taller and taller
49. Peter is John.
A. younger and more intelligent than
B. more young and intelligent than
C. more intelligent and young than
D. the more intelligent and younger than
50. The Mekong Delta is deltas in Vietnam.
A. the largest of the two B. the more larger of the two
C. one of the two largest D. one of the two larger

51. The more cars people produce, cheaper they are.
A. the B. the cars have
C. the more
52. Is her health getting and?
A. bad / bad B. good / good
C. worse / worse D. more / more
53. we eat, the fatter we become.
A. The much B. The more C. Many D. A lot of
54. The test becomes and
A. hard / hard B. difficult / difficult
C. harder / harder D. difficulty / difficulty
55. His health is getting and
A. good / good B. better / better C. bad / bad D. well / well
56. The more paper we save, preserved.
A. more is wood pulp B. the more wood pulp is
C. wood pulp is D. the much wood pulp is
57. The more polluted air we breathe, we get.
A. the more weaker B. the more weak
C. the weaker D. weaker more
58. The more we study, the we are.
A. more good B. better C. better than D. good
59. The more I tried my best to help her, she became.
A. less lazy B. the lazier C. the more lazy D. lazier
60. "What's your thought of her presence here?"
"The longer she stays, I dislike her."
A. the most B. the very more C. much more D. the more
61. The weather becomes
A. colder with colder B. colder and colder
C. colder and more cold D. more and more cold
62. The more he slept, irritable he became.
A. the most B. the very more C. much more D. the more
63. he worked, the more money he earned.
A. The more hard B. The hard C. The harder D. The hardest

64. I get to know Jim, the more I like him.
 A. For more B. More C. The more D. The most
65. The competition makes the price of goods
 A. most cheap and cheap B. cheaper and cheaper
 C. more cheap and more cheap D. cheaper and more cheaper
66. That factory is producing pollution.
 A. more and more B. better and better
 C. less and least D. more and less
67. The I read about history, the it makes me realize how relevant history is for us today.
 A. more / better B. better / better
 C. more / more D. better / more
68. The less we study, the we are.
 A. worse B. bad C. well D. good
69. the match was, the more spectators it attracted.
 A. The most interesting B. The best interesting
 C. The more interesting D. The interesting
70. The more running water you use,
 A. your bill will be higher B. will be higher your bill
 C. the higher your bill will be D. the highest your bill will be
- E. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.**
1. Richard feels good than several days ago.
 A B C D
2. Mary and Daisy are both intelligent students. Mary is so intelligent as Daisy.
 A B C D
3. I found the conversation as most interesting and I was glad to practice my English.
 A B C D
4. The Caspian Sea, a salt lake, is the largest than any other lakes in the world.
 A B C D
5. He drives the car more dangerous than his brother does.
 A B C D

6. It was the most biggest building that I had ever seen.
 A B C D
7. I wish my house were so large as Jone's.
 A B C D
8. The Mekong is one of the longer rivers in the world.
 A B C D
9. She can play the piano more good than her sister.
 A B C D
10. Many people believe that New York is the most great city in America.
 A B C D
11. Jessica is only an amateur, but she sings well than most professionals.
 A B C D
12. This house is more spacious as that white house I bought in Rapid City, South Dakota last year.
 A B C D
13. They asked a lot of questions, checked their figures, and came up with best solution.
 A B C D
14. Almost everyone has heard the more famous Olympic saying: "Stronger, Higher, Faster."
 A B C D
15. Louise is the more capable of the three girls who have tried out for the part in the play.
 A B C D
16. This telephone isn't as cheaper than the other one, but it works much better.
 A B C D
17. Stories are the most good way of teaching moral lessons to young people.
 A B C D
18. The first skill to learn is how to write only the more important words, not whole sentences.
 A B C D

19. It is certainly true that the average woman has weaker muscles than the average man.

- A B C D

20. In 1925, he joined the advertising department of Doubleday Page and Company,

- A B

one of the most large publishing houses in New York.

- C D

F. Choose one sentence that best rewrites the sentence given.

1. *They understand more than we do.*

- A. We don't understand as much as they do.
- B. We don't understand anything at all.
- C. They understand everything inside out.
- D. They are very intelligent.

2. *It is much more difficult to speak English than to speak French.*

- A. To speak French is more difficult than to speak English.
- B. To speak English is more difficult than to speak French.
- C. Speaking English is more difficult than to speak French.
- D. Speaking French is not as difficult as to speaking English.

3. *My interview lasted longer than yours.*

- A. Your interview wasn't as short as mine.
- B. Your interview was shorter than mine.
- C. Your interview was as long as mine.
- D. Your interview was longer than mine.

4. *When I was younger, I used to go climbing more than I do now.*

- A. Now I don't go climbing anymore.
- B. I used to go climbing when I younger.
- C. Now I don't go climbing as much as I did.
- D. I don't like going climbing any more.

5. *Your coffee is not as good as mine.*

- A. Mine is better than yours.
- B. My coffee is better than your.

C. My coffee is better than yours.

D. My coffee is more good than yours.

6. *I can't cook as well as my mother does.*

- A. My mother can cook better than I can.
- B. My mother can't cook better than I can.
- C. My mother can cook well than I can.
- D. I can cook better than my mother can.

7. *Murder is the most serious of all crimes.*

- A. Murder is very serious.
- B. No crime is more serious than murder.
- C. Everyone is very afraid of murder.
- D. Murder is the dangerous crime.

8. *No one in this class is as tall as Richard.*

- A. Richard is the tallest in this class.
- B. Richard is taller than in this class.
- C. Richard is the most tall in this class.
- D. Richard is more tall than in this class.

9. *This is the best music I have ever heard.*

- A. I've never heard better music than this.
- B. I've never heard such a good music as this.
- C. I've never heard so good music as this.
- D. This is the first time I've heard this good music.

10. *This is the most interesting novel I've ever read.*

- A. Knowing that the novel will be interesting, I read it.
- B. If only I had known the novel was so interesting, I'd have read it earlier.
- C. I don't think it is the most interesting novel.
- D. I have never read a more interesting novel than this.

LÝ THUYẾT



- 1) Chủ động – bị động
- 2) Trực tiếp – gián tiếp
- 3) Đảo ngữ
- 4) Mệnh đề trạng từ chỉ lý do, sự nhượng bộ
- 5) So sánh (xem thêm so sánh bằng/nhất/hơn)
- 6) Điều kiện
- 7) Ao ước
- 8) Thuê/nhờ ai làm việc gì
- 9) Đề nghị, lời khuyên
- 10) Nguyên nhân – kết quả
- 11) Mục đích/nguyên nhân
- 12) Lần thứ ... (làm chuyện gì)
- 13) Ý kiến/đánh giá một sự việc
- 14) Mất ... (thời gian) làm việc gì
- 15) Thói quen hiện tại và trong quá khứ

Các dạng biến đổi câu thường gặp

- 1) Chủ động – bị động:
- 2) Trực tiếp – gián tiếp:
- 3) Đảo ngữ:
- 4) Mệnh đề trạng từ chỉ lý do, sự nhượng bộ:

though/although/even though + S + V

→ despite/in spite of + V-ing/N/N phrase

LƯU Ý: BUT → ALTHOUGH

Eg: Cars cause pollution but people still want them.

→ Although cars cause pollution, people still want them.

5) So sánh: (xem thêm so sánh bằng/nhất/hơn)

Eg: Mary is not as tall as Alice.

→ Mary is not so tall as Alice.

→ Mary is less tall than Alice.

→ Alice is taller than Mary.



6) Điều kiện:

6.1 Không có thật ở hiện tại:

Eg: I'm busy. I don't go to the concert.

→ If I were not busy, I would go to the concert.

→ Unless I were busy, I would go to the concert.

6.2 Không có thật ở quá khứ:

Eg: Peter missed the train because he woke up too late.

→ If Peter hadn't woken up too late, he wouldn't have missed the train.

→ Unless Peter had woken up too late, he wouldn't have missed the train.

7) Ao ước:

7.1 Không có thật ở hiện tại:

Eg: Tom is not happy because his girlfriend is not here.

→ Tom wishes his girlfriend were here.

7.2 Không có thật ở quá khứ:

Eg: I am sorry I missed your wedding party.

→ I wish I hadn't missed your wedding party.

7.2 Không có thật ở tương lai:

Eg: They will not attend my birthday party next week.

→ I wish they would attend my birthday party next week.

8) Thuê/nhờ ai làm việc gì:

S + V + O → S + have + O + V

→ S + get + O + to V

→ S + have + O + V3/ed

→ S + get + O + V3/ed

Eg: The mechanic repairs my car every month.

→ I have the mechanic repair my car every month.

→ I get the mechanic to repair my car every month.

→ I have/get my car repaired by the mechanic every month.

9) Đề nghị, lời khuyên:

- ✓ Let's + V
- ✓ S + advise/suggest + V-ing
- ✓ S + advise + O + to V
- ✓ S + suggest (that) + S (+ should) + V
- ✓ How/What about + V-ing?
- ✓ Would you mind + V-ing?
- ✓ Why don't we/you + V?

Eg: Let's go for a ride!

→ What about going for a ride?

Please don't play the music so loudly.

→ Would you mind not playing the music so loudly?

10) Nguyên nhân – kết quả:

- ✓ so + adj/adv + that clause
- ✓ such (a/an) + adj + N + that clause
- ✓ too + adj/adv (+ for O) + to + V
- ✓ not + adj + enough (+ for O) + to + V

Eg: The water was so cold that the children couldn't swim in it.

→ It was such cold water that the children couldn't swim in it.

→ The water was too cold for the children to swim in.

→ The water is not warm enough for the children to swim in.



LƯU Ý:

Trong cấu trúc *so/such ... that*, ta giữ lại từ "it".

Trong cấu trúc *too ... to* và *not ... enough ... to*, ta bỏ từ "it".

11) Mục đích/nguyên nhân:

- ✓ S + V + to/in order to/so as to + V
- ✓ S + V + so that/in order that + S + can/could + V
- ✓ S + V + because + S + V

Eg: They started early to go to school on time.

→ They started early so that they could go to school on time.

→ They started early because they wanted to go to school on time.

12) Lần thứ ... (làm chuyện gì):

S + have/had + never + V3/ed

S + have/had + not + V3/ed + before

→ It/This is/was the first time (that) + S + have/had + V3/ed

Eg: I have not eaten this kind of food before.

→ This is the first time that I have eaten this kind of food.

13) Ý kiến/đánh giá một sự việc:

It + be + adj (for O) + to V

→ To V/V-ing + be + adj (for O)

Eg: It is not easy for me to master English.

→ To master/Mastering English is not easy for me.

Eg: It is more dangerous to drive a motorbike than to drive a car.

→ To drive a motorbike is more dangerous than to drive a car.

→ Driving a motorbike is more dangerous than driving a car.

14) Mất ... (thời gian) làm việc gì:

S + spend + time + V-ing hoặc S + last + time

(Hoặc S + spend + time + on + something)

→ It + takes/took + O + time + to + V

Eg: He spent 15 minutes finishing this exercise.

→ It took him 15 minutes to finish this exercise.

Eg: The flight to Hong Kong lasts about 8 hours.

→ It takes about 8 hours to fly to Hong Kong.



15) Thói quen hiện tại và trong quá khứ:

- ✓ S + often/usually + V
- ✓ S + find + it + adj + to V

→ S + be used to + V-ing

Eg: They usually drink beer.

→ They are used to drinking beer.

Eg: I don't find it difficult to get up early.

→ I am used to getting up early.

S + used to + V → S + no longer + V = S + not ... any more/any longer

Eg: He used to smoke cigarettes.

→ He no longer smokes cigarettes.

→ He doesn't smoke cigarettes any more / any longer.

LUU Y:

be used to + V/ be used for + V-ing: công dụng một vật

Eg: What is money used for?

→ It is used to buy or sell goods.

→ It is used for buying or selling goods.

BÀI TẬP

A. Rewrite the following sentences with the words given so that the rewritten ones have the same meaning as the original ones.

- 1) The bridge was so low that the lorry couldn't go under it.
→ The bridge was too
→ It was such
- 2) My brother used to walk to school with his friends.
→ My brother no longer
→ No longer
- 3) "What's your name?" the policeman said to the little boy.
→ The policeman asked the little boy
4) My kitchen is smaller than yours.
→ Your
5) I'll give you my phone number. I want you to phone me when necessary.
→ I'll give you my phone number so
6) I couldn't come there on time because I got up late.
→ Because of
→ If
→ I got up late
7) My father advised me to choose that job.
→ I
8) That boy is clever. He can make children's toys.
→ That boy is so
→ That is such
- 9) That pupil is very lazy. My sister can't teach him English.
→ That pupil is so
→ That pupil is too
- 10) I regret buying the second-hand motorbike.
→ I wish I

11) They think that she is the most beautiful girl in this class.

→ She is

→ It is

12) We have to keep these explosives in a safe place.

→ These explosives

13) It was such a good film that we decided to go and see it again.

→ The film was

14) People are using computers in almost every field.

→ Computers

15) The thief drove very quickly. The police couldn't catch him.

→ The thief

16) I would like you to help me to lift this heavy box up.

→ Would you mind

17) Someone rang the alarm as soon as the burglars left the shop.

→ No sooner

18) The last time I saw her was a week ago.

→ I haven't

19) He had hardly put down the phone when his wife rang back.

→ Hardly

20) She stayed in bed because of her sickness.

→ Because

21) You didn't work hard. You got bad marks.

→ If

22) The boy can't wear the shirt because it's very tight.

→ The shirt is so

→ The shirt is too

23) Both Peter and Mary enjoy scientific Expeditions.

→ Mary enjoys scientific Expeditions, and so

→ Peter enjoys scientific Expeditions, and Mary

24) Mike is a more careful driver than his brother.

→ Mike drives

25) She worked hard so she got high wages.

→ If

26) Unless you phone me tonight, you won't get any information.

→ If

27) Tom cried a lot when he was a child.

→ Tom used to

28) This problem is very difficult. He can't solve it.

→ The problem is too

→ It is such

→ The problem is so

29) Let's go to the seaside this summer.

→ Why don't we

→ How about

→ I suggest

30) Many people said that our team won the gold medal by chance.

→ Our team was

31) I'm sorry that I lent him much money.

→ I wish

32) Mary felt sick because she drank too much wine.

→ If

33) You will catch a cold if you don't put on your coat.

→ Unless

34) Both he and she couldn't afford to buy a car.

→ He couldn't afford to buy a car, and neither

→ He couldn't afford to buy a car, and she

35) We enjoyed our trip although the weather was bad.

→ In spite of

36) He was sleepy; therefore, he went to bed early.

→ Because

37) I made a mistake because I was very tired.

→ Because of

38) These cars are cheap but they last a long time.

→ Even though

39) Despite the noise, the children slept well.

→ Although

40) Because of being tired, he didn't walk to the station.

→ Because

B. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D to complete each sentence or to best replace the original sentence.

1) Our seats were _____ far from the stage that we couldn't see the actors and actresses clearly.

- A. very B. too C. enough D. so

2) He was _____ he never washed his clothes by himself.

- A. too lazy B. so lazy that
C. very lazy that D. such lazy that

3) They are _____ young _____ drive the car.

- A. so / that B. too / to
C. enough / to D. not only / but also

4) It's _____ long time since he last saw his parents.

- A. such a B. so C. very D. too

5) Is there _____ for everyone?

- A. food and drink enough B. enough food and drink
C. enough of food and drink D. enough food and drink enough

6) He was _____ he could not continue to work.

- A. very tired that B. such tired that
C. too tired that D. so tired that

7) John's eyes were _____ bad that he couldn't read the number plate of the car in front.

- A. such B. too C. so D. very

8) She was _____ clever that she could make a dress by hands.

- A. much B. very C. so D. such

9) Most of the pupils are _____ to pass the examination.

- A. enough good B. good enough C. too good D. very good

10) You can send me a letter if you want to, but your phone call is _____ for me.

- A. enough good B. good as enough
C. good enough D. good than enough

) Davis has _____ many patients _____ he is always busy.

- A. too / that B. very / until C. such / that D. so / that

) It was _____ a difficult question that they couldn't explain.

- A. so B. such C. very D. too

) The lesson _____ for me to understand.

- A. is very difficult B. too difficult
C. difficult too D. is too difficult

The tent show is _____ for us to see.

- A. enough interesting B. very interesting
C. interesting enough D. interesting

They are _____ that they can't buy a bicycle.

- A. enough poor B. poor enough C. so poor D. too poor

If I have _____, I'll travel south to New Orleans.

- A. money enough B. enough money C. too money D. so money

It's surprising now _____ beautiful girl can make so heinous crime.

- A. such B. so C. a such D. such a

These are _____ ugly chairs _____ I am going to give them away.

- A. so / that B. such / that
C. so many / that D. so much / that

She is _____ kind that everybody loves her.

- A. such B. such a C. so D. so a

We have _____ in the house, so we needn't go shopping tomorrow.

- A. enough food B. food enough C. too food D. food too

The day was _____ that we had a shower four times a day.

- A. such a hot B. so hot C. very hot D. hot

It was _____ that I couldn't eat it.

- A. such a hard cake B. such hard cake
C. so a hard cake D. so hard cake

He is _____ a busy man that he really needs a helper.

- A. so B. such C. very D. quite

It was _____ that we went for a picnic in the countryside.

- A. so nice a day B. such nice day
C. so nice day D. such a nice day

40) Because of being tired, he didn't walk to the station.

→ Because

B. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D to complete each sentence or to best replace the original sentence.

1) Our seats were _____ far from the stage that we couldn't see the actors and actresses clearly.

- A. very B. too C. enough D. so

2) He was _____ he never washed his clothes by himself.

- A. too lazy B. so lazy that
C. very lazy that D. such lazy that

3) They are _____ young _____ drive the car.

- A. so / that B. too / to
C. enough / to D. not only / but also

4) It's _____ long time since he last saw his parents.

- A. such a B. so C. very D. too

5) Is there _____ for everyone?

- A. food and drink enough B. enough food and drink
C. enough of food and drink D. enough food and drink enough

6) He was _____ he could not continue to work.

- A. very tired that B. such tired that
C. too tired that D. so tired that

7) John's eyes were _____ bad that he couldn't read the number plate of the car in front.

- A. such B. too C. so D. very

8) She was _____ clever that she could make a dress by hands.

- A. much B. very C. so D. such

9) Most of the pupils are _____ to pass the examination.

- A. enough good B. good enough C. too good D. very good

10) You can send me a letter if you want to, but your phone call is _____ for me.

- A. enough good B. good as enough
C. good enough D. good than enough

11) Davis has _____ many patients _____ he is always busy.

- A. too / that B. very / until C. such / that D. so / that

12) It was _____ a difficult question that they couldn't explain.

- A. so B. such C. very D. too

13) The lesson _____ for me to understand.

- A. is very difficult B. too difficult
C. difficult too D. is too difficult

14) The tent show is _____ for us to see.

- A. enough interesting B. very interesting
C. interesting enough D. interesting

15) They are _____ that they can't buy a bicycle.

- A. enough poor B. poor enough C. so poor D. too poor

16) If I have _____, I'll travel south to New Orleans.

- A. money enough B. enough money C. too money D. so money

17) It's surprising now _____ beautiful girl can make so heinous crime.

- A. such B. so C. a such D. such a

18) These are _____ ugly chairs _____ I am going to give them away.

- A. so / that B. such / that
C. so many / that D. so much / that

19) She is _____ kind that everybody loves her.

- A. such B. such a C. so D. so a

20) We have _____ in the house, so we needn't go shopping tomorrow.

- A. enough food B. food enough C. too food D. food too

21) The day was _____ that we had a shower four times a day.

- A. such a hot B. so hot C. very hot D. hot

22) It was _____ that I couldn't eat it.

- A. such a hard cake B. such hard cake
C. so a hard cake D. so hard cake

23) He is _____ a busy man that he really needs a helper.

- A. so B. such C. very D. quite

24) It was _____ that we went for a picnic in the countryside.

- A. so nice a day B. such nice day
C. so nice day D. such a nice day

25) My mathematics teacher is _____ person that all of us like his period.

- A. a such funny
- B. a so funny
- C. such funny
- D. such a funny

26) That old woman is _____ deaf to hear what her children say.

- A. so
- B. enough
- C. too
- D. not

27) He was _____ terrified to move.

- A. enough
- B. very
- C. too
- D. so

28) - "Was the boy upset about his bad marks?"

- "Yes, he was _____ upset that he cried about it afterwards."

- A. very
- B. so
- C. such
- D. too

29) She hasn't got _____ to buy a car.

- A. enough money
- B. money enough
- C. so many money
- D. so much money

30) It was _____ a boring speech that I fell asleep.

- A. such
- B. so
- C. very
- D. too

31) It was _____ a boring film that Tom fell asleep.

- A. such
- B. so
- C. much
- D. too

32) My son is _____ young to go to school.

- A. very
- B. too
- C. so
- D. enough

33) - "What a cold day!"

- "Yes, it's _____ that I have to wear two pullovers and a coat.

- A. such cold
- B. so cold
- C. too cold
- D. cold so

34) Those boys took a long ladder _____

- A. that they will get the ball from the roof
- B. and then get the ball from the roof
- C. in order to get the ball from the roof
- D. so that the ball from the roof can get

35) This skirt is _____ small for me. I need a larger size.

- A. so
- B. not
- C. too
- D. all are correct

36) She regretted to tell him that _____

- A. she was leaving the tickets at home
- B. the tickets at home would be left

C. she would have left the tickets at home

D. she had left the tickets at home

37) - Why don't we make a fire? - It's not cold _____ to make a fire.

- A. too
- B. enough
- C. such
- D. much

38) They are not _____ to take part in this program of the World Health Organization.

- A. as old
- B. enough old
- C. old enough
- D. so old

39) Why can't you solve _____ easy exercises?

- A. so
- B. such a
- C. such
- D. all are correct

40) The football match was postponed _____ the bad weather.

- A. because
- B. in spite
- C. despite
- D. because of

41) She is _____ to answer the question.

- A. enough intelligent
- B. so intelligent
- C. intelligent enough
- D. very intelligent

42) Peter doesn't like scuba-diving. _____ does his brother.

- A. Too
- B. Neither
- C. Either
- D. So

43) This exercise is _____ hard for me to do.

- A. very
- B. too
- C. so
- D. quite

44) _____, we couldn't have continued with the project.

- A. Unless we had your contribution
- B. Provided your contribution wouldn't come
- C. Even if you didn't like to contribute
- D. If you hadn't contributed positively

45) Alex did not do very well in class _____

- A. therefore he was a good student
- B. because he failed to study properly
- C. although he was not hard-working
- D. because he had studied badly

- 46) That play was _____ for her to see again.
- too interesting
 - enough interesting
 - interesting enough
 - so interesting
- 47) She didn't want to go _____ she knew all her friends would be there.
- wherever
 - so that
 - therefore
 - even though
- 48) Surely 15 minutes is _____ for you to make tea.
- long time
 - enough time
 - long enough
 - too enough
- 49) If I had the map now, I _____ a short-cut across the desert.
- could take
 - take
 - can take
 - could have taken
- 50) My father is very busy. _____, he is always willing to give a hand with the housework.
- However
 - Despite
 - Therefore
 - Although
- 51) I'm not _____ that ceiling.
- enough tall to reach
 - tall enough for reach
 - tall enough reaching
 - tall enough to reach
- 52) Lan's grandfather _____ teach literature at a high school, but now he has retired.
- is used to
 - was used to
 - use to
 - used to
- 53) I _____ any classes if I were you.
- didn't miss
 - wouldn't miss
 - won't miss
 - don't miss
- 54) It was cold and wet, _____ Paul went to the beach.
- therefore
 - although
 - because
 - but
- 55) John hasn't seen the new movie yet, and _____
- I have neither
 - I don't either
 - so have I
 - neither have I
- 56) Peter never comes to class late, _____?
- does he
 - does Peter
 - doesn't Peter
 - doesn't he

- 57) They haven't seen their parents for five years.
- It's five years since they last saw their parents.
 - Their parents have seen them for five years.
 - They saw their parents five years ago.
 - A & C are correct.
- 58) Although she felt jealous, she tried to hide her feelings.
- Despite feeling jealous, she tried to hide her feelings.
 - Despite her jealousy, she tried to hide her feelings.
 - She tried to hide her feelings in spite of she felt jealous.
 - A & B are correct.
- 59) I regret not studying French when I had a chance.
- I wish I had studied French when I had a chance.
 - I wish I studied French when I had a chance.
 - I wish I would study French when I had a chance.
 - I wish I study French when I had a chance.
- 60) You must work harder or you'll be sacked.
- Unless you work harder, you'll be sacked.
 - If you work harder, you won't be sacked.
 - If you don't work harder, you won't be sacked.
 - A & B are correct.
- 61) Jane can swim further than I can.
- I can't swim as far as Jane.
 - Jane can swim as far as I can.
 - I can swim further than Jane.
 - A & C are correct.
- 62) It's not a habit of mine to sleep in the afternoon.
- I am not used to sleeping in the afternoon.
 - I am not used for sleeping in the afternoon.
 - I used to sleep in the afternoon.
 - A & C are correct.
- 63) Someone was breaking into my shop.
- My shop was broken into.
 - My shop being broken into.

C. My shop was being broken into.

D. My shop broken into.

64) My brother is a factory worker. He talked with you yesterday.

- A. My brother, who talked with you yesterday, is a factory worker.
- B. My brother, that talked with you yesterday, is a factory worker.
- C. My brother, with whom talked you yesterday, is a factory worker.
- D. All are correct.

65) The test was so difficult that we couldn't finish it in two hours.

- A. It was such a difficult test that we couldn't finish it in two hours.
- B. The test was too difficult for us to finish in two hours.
- C. The test was not easy enough for us to finish it in two hours.
- D. All are correct.

66) This is the first time I have lived in such a friendly neighbourhood.

- A. I have lived in such a friendly neighbourhood before.
- B. I haven't lived in such a friendly neighbourhood before.
- C. I had lived in such a friendly neighbourhood before.
- D. All are correct.

67) She didn't make any mistakes in her answers because of her carefulness.

- A. Because her carefulness she didn't make any mistakes in her answers.
- B. Because she was careful, she made many mistakes in her answers.
- C. Because she was careful, she didn't make any mistakes in her answers.
- D. Because she was careful, so she didn't make any mistakes in her answers.

68) I didn't have time, so I didn't go shopping.

- A. If I have time, I will go shopping.
- B. If I had time, I would go shopping.
- C. If I had had time, I would have gone shopping.
- D. If I have had time, I would have gone shopping.

69) I won't do anything if you don't answer my question.

- A. Unless you answer my question, I won't do anything.
- B. If you answer my question, I won't do anything.
- C. Unless you don't answer my question, I won't do anything.
- D. A & B are correct.

70) Shall we go out for dinner?

- A. What about go out for dinner?
- B. I suggest go out for dinner.
- C. How about going out for dinner?
- D. All are correct.

71) We spent a whole day looking for these old pictures.

- A. It took we a whole day to look for these old pictures.
- B. It took us a whole day looking for these old pictures.
- C. It took us a whole day to looking for these old pictures.
- D. It took us a whole day to look for these old pictures.

72) It was so late that nothing could be done.

- A. It was too late for nothing to be done.
- B. It was too late for anything to be done.
- C. It was such late that nothing could be done
- D. B & C are correct.

73) Learning a foreign language is interesting.

- A. It is interesting to learn a foreign language.
- B. It is interesting to learning a foreign language.
- C. It is interesting learning a foreign language.
- D. It is interesting for learning a foreign language.

74) It was such a boring speech that we began to yawn.

- A. The speech was very boring that we began to yawn.
- B. It was so a boring speech that we began to yawn.
- C. The speech was too boring that we began to yawn.
- D. The speech was so boring that we began to yawn.

75) He kept on working though he was ill.

- A. In spite of was ill, he kept on working.
- B. In spite of being ill, he kept on working.
- C. Despite his illness, he kept on working.
- D. B & C are correct.

76) Tim is too young to drive a car.

- A. Tim is not old enough to drive a car.
- B. Tim is not young enough to drive a car.
- C. Tim is old enough to drive a car.
- D. Tim is so old that he can drive a car.

77) Unless you work harder, you'll fail.

- A. If you work harder, you'll fail.
- B. If you don't work harder, you'll fail.
- C. If you work harder, you'll not fail.
- D. B & C are correct.

78) To do all this work is hard.

- A. I find it hard to do all this work.
- B. I find it hard do all this work.
- C. I find hard to do all this work.
- D. I find it hard doing all this work.

79) Although Tom took a taxi, he was still late for the party.

- A. In spite of Tom took a taxi, he was still late for the party.
- B. Tom was still late for the party in spite of taking a taxi.
- C. Despite took a taxi, Tom was still late for the party.
- D. B & C are correct.

80) The book was so good that I couldn't put it down.

- A. It was so a good book that I couldn't put it down.
- B. It was such a good book that I couldn't put it down.
- C. The book was so good for me to put it down.
- D. B & C are correct.

C. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1) In my opinion that girl is enough beautiful to be a movie star.

- A
- B
- C
- D

2) The specific gravity of the water in the great Salt Lake is too great that one

- A
- B

cannot sink or completely submerge in it.

- C
- D

3) This lesson is such long that I have written it for 30 minutes.

- A
- B
- C
- D

4) The pull of the earth is too strong that no one can jump as high as three meters.

- A
- B
- C
- D

5) It was so an interesting film that my mother had seen it three times.

- A
- B
- C
- D

6) Mary is so an intelligent pupil that she can answer this question.

- A
- B
- C
- D

7) Mars is far so from the earth that our spaceships cannot reach it in a few months.

- A
- B
- C
- D

8) Despite the time of the year, yesterday's temperature was enough hot to turn

- A
- B
- C
- D

on the air conditioning

- D

9) I was such nervous that I didn't think I would pass the exams.

- A
- B
- C
- D

10) The problems of pollution are too difficult for us to solving.

- A
- B
- C
- D

11) His father was so poor to send him to school.

- A
- B
- C
- D

12) This refrigerator is very old to keep things at a proper temperature.

- A
- B
- C
- D

13) She is such good at mathematics that everyone admires her.

- A
- B
- C
- D

14) George is not enough intelligent to pass this mathematics class.

- A
- B
- C
- D

15) The novel was such interesting that I had read it all night.

- A
- B
- C
- D

16) He was tired that he couldn't continue his work.

- A
- B
- C
- D

17) It was so a funny film that I burst out laughing.

- A
- B
- C
- D

18) His TOEFL score was enough high to be accepted.

- A
- B
- C
- D

19) It was so an exciting novel that I do not want to stop reading it.

- A
- B
- C
- D

20) The woman was too old that she could not run.

- A
- B
- C
- D

UNIT 15

INVERSION

SỰ ĐẢO NGỮ

LÝ THUYẾT



1. Đảo ngữ với NO và NOT
2. Đảo ngữ với các trạng từ phủ định: Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Hardly ever,.....
3. Đảo ngữ với ONLY
4. Đảo ngữ với các cụm từ có No
5. No sooner.... than....
6. Đảo ngữ với Not only but.... also
7. Đảo ngữ với SO
8. So + adjective + be + N + clause
9. Đảo ngữ với until/ till + clause/ adv of time + auxiliary + S + V
10. Đảo ngữ với No where + auxiliary + S + V
11. Đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện

Trong tiếng Anh, hiện tượng đảo ngữ là một hiện tượng khó và ít được sử dụng. Đảo ngữ thường được sử dụng khi muốn nhấn mạnh.

1. Đảo ngữ với NO và NOT

No + N + auxiliary + S + Verb(inf).

Not any + N + auxiliary + S + verb(inf).

Eg: No money shall I lend you from now on.

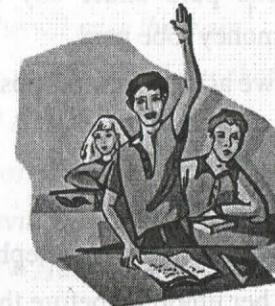
= Not any money shall I lend you from now on.

(Mình sẽ không cho cậu vay một đồng nào kể từ bây giờ.)

2. Đảo ngữ với các trạng từ phủ định: Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Hardly ever,.....

Never/ rarely/ seldom / little/ hardly ever + auxiliary + S + V

1. Never in mid-summer does it snow. (Không bao giờ có tuyết vào giữa mùa hè.)
2. Hardly ever does he speak in the public. (Hiếm khi anh ta nói trước đám đông.)



3. Đảo ngữ với ONLY

only later

only in this way

only in that way

only then + auxiliary + S + V

only after + N

only by V-ing/ N

only when + clause

only with + N

only if + clause

only in adv of time/ place

Eg:

1. Only after all guests had gone home could we relax. (Chỉ sau khi khách khuya về hết, chúng tôi mới được thư giãn.)
2. Only when I understand her did I like her. (Chỉ khi tôi đã hiểu, tôi mới thích cô ấy.)
3. Only by practising English every day can you speak it fluently. (Chỉ bằng cách luyện tập tiếng Anh hàng ngày bạn mới có thể nói流利.)



4. Đảo ngữ với các cụm từ có No

At no time	On no condition
On no account + auxiliary + S + N	Under/ in no circumstances
For no season	In no way
No longer	

Eg: For no reason shall you play truant.

1. The money is not to be paid under any circumstances = Under no circumstances is the money to be paid.
2. On no condition shall we accept their proposal.

5. No sooner.... than....

Hardly/ rarely/ scarcely.... When/ before

1. No sooner had I arrived home than the telephone rang.
2. Hardly had she put up her umbrella before the rain began down in torrents.

6. Đảo ngữ với Not only but.... also

Not only + auxiliary + S + V but.... also....

1. Not only is he good at English but he also draws very well.
2. Not only does he sing well but he also plays musical instruments perfectly.

7. Đảo ngữ với SO

So + adj/ adv + auxiliary + S + V + that clause

Eg: So dark is it that I can't write.

1. So busy am I that I don't have time to look after myself.
2. So difficult was the exam that few students passed it.
3. So attractive is she that many boys run after her.

8. So + adjective + be + N + clause

So intelligent is she that she can answer all questions in the interview.

9. Đảo ngữ với until/ till + clause/ adv of time + auxiliary + S + V

1. I didn't know that I had lost my key till I got home = Not until/ till I got home did I know that I had lost my key.

10. Đảo ngữ với No where + auxiliary + S + V

1. No where in VN is the scenery as beautiful as that in my country.
2. No where do I feel as comfortable as I do at home.
3. No where can you buy the goods as good as those in my country.

11. Đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện

a. Câu điều kiện loại 1: If clause = should + S + V

Should she come late, she will miss the train.

Should he lend me some money, I will buy that house.

b. Câu điều kiện loại 2: If clause = Were S + to V/ Were + S

If I were you, I would work harder = Were I you...

If I knew her, I would invite her to the party = Were I to know her...

c. Câu đk loại 3: If clause = Had + S + P_{II}

If my parents hadn't encouraged me, I would have taken pass exam. = Had my parents not encouraged me, I would have taken pass exam.

BÀI TẬP

I. Choose the most suitable words underlined.

1. Jim promised that he would never/ never would tell anyone else.
2. Not until it was too late I remembered / did I remember I call Susan.
3. Hardly had we settle down in our seats than/when the lights went out.
4. Only after checking three times I was/was I certain of the answer.
5. At no time I was aware/was I aware of anything out of usual.
6. Only Mary and Sally passed/ did they pass the final examination.
7. So the waves were high/ So high were the waves that swimming was dangerous.
8. Only when Peter has arrived / has Peter arrived can we begin the program.
9. No sooner had it stopped raining than/when the sun came out.
10. If should you leave early/ should you leave early could you leave me a lift?

II. Rewrite these sentences, using NEVER.

1. She has never been so happy before.
.....
2. I have never heard such nonsense!
.....
3. I have never seen such a mess in my life.
.....
4. Our profits this year are higher than they have ever been.
.....
5. She would never again trust her own judgment when buying antiques.
.....
6. The firm has never before laid on such a sumptuous celebration.
.....
7. I've never come across such a horrifying film.
.....
8. I have never been so moved by a Shakespeare production.
.....

9. I never for one moment thought the consequences would be so far-reaching.
.....

10. I had never tasted such a wonderful combination of flavors before.
.....

III. Rewrite these sentences, using IN, AT, UNDER, or ON.

1. Keith certainly can't be held responsible for the accident.
.....
2. The children themselves are not in any way to blame for the disaster.
.....
3. The existence of extraterrestrial is not confirmed by the report.
.....
4. I was never shown how to operate the machinery.
.....
5. He never suspected that she was a witch.
.....
6. There has never been a time when the English language was not in a state of change.
.....
7. Miss Weaver will not be offered the job under any circumstances.
.....
8. You should not send money to us by post under any circumstances.
.....
9. We can't exchange tickets in any circumstances.
.....
10. I won't go out that way to visit him again on my account!
.....

IV. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with NOT.

1. He is my friend as well as yours.
.....
2. He booked tickets for the afternoon performance and the evening performance as well.
.....

3. Burglars stole a thousand pounds' worth of electrical goods, and left the flat in an awful mess.

.....

4. Tony was not only late, but he had left all his books behind.

.....

5. You will enhance your posture and improve your acting ability on this course.

.....

6. It isn't worth considering his suggestion for a moment.

.....

7. She didn't shed a tear when the story ended in tragedy.

.....

8. The manager not once offered us an apology.

.....

9. She made no sound as she crept upstairs.

.....

10. He only thought about having a holiday abroad after he retired.

.....

V. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with ONLY.

1. I only realized how dangerous the situation had been when I got home.

.....

2. It wasn't until last week that the Agriculture Minister admitted defeat.

.....

3. I understood Hamlet only after seeing it on the stage.

.....

4. They didn't get round to business until they had finished eating.

.....

5. They had to wait for twelve hours before their flight left.

.....

6. I didn't realize who he was until later.

.....

7. The door could not be opened without using force.

.....

8. I won't agree until Tom's apologized.

.....

9. To get the 40% discount, you must buy all twelve books at the same time.

.....

10. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard every day.

VI. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with SHOULD.

1. If the Government were forced into another election, it would be the favourite to win.

.....

2. If you should wish to make an appointment to see Dr Simons, she is available between 9.00 and 11.00.

.....

3. If you should have further problems with your printer, contact your dealer for advice.

.....

4. If you should decide to accept the post, you will be expected to start work on 1st April.

.....

5. If we hear any further news, we will be in touch immediately.

.....

6. If you wish to take advantage of the offer, kindly tick the box on your order form.

.....

7. If the film should be a post office success, they may be sequel.

.....

8. If you should change your mind, there will always be a job for you here.

.....

VII. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with WERE OR HAD

1. If the chemical were to leak, a large area of the sea would be contaminated.

.....

2. If Germany were to beat Romania, they would face Italy in the final.
.....
3. If Mr Morgan were still head master, he would not permit such bad behavior.
.....
4. If you had given it on time, you would have got a high mark.
.....
5. If she had become a lawyer, as her parents wished, she would have earned a large salary.
.....
6. If anything has gone wrong with my plan, I would have held responsibility.
.....
7. If it hadn't been for Henry, I might not have met you.
.....
8. If only they had confirmed by phone, the airline could have warned them.
.....
9. The coast guards could have saved the vessels if they had been notified.
.....
10. If his solicitor hadn't advised him, he would have made a serious mistake.
.....

VIII. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.

1. He spent all his money. He even borrowed some from me.
→ Not only _____
2. He had hardly left the office when the telephone rang.
→ No sooner _____
3. I had only just put the phone down when the boss rang back.
→ Hardly _____
4. He didn't finish his work until the bell rang.
→ Not until _____
5. We only began to see the symptoms of the disease after several months.
→ Only _____

6. I have never seen anyone in my life drink as much as you.
→ Never _____
7. A sleeping dog was lying under the table.
→ Under the table _____
8. His brother had rarely been more excited.
→ Rarely _____
9. The facts were not all made public until later.
→ Only _____
10. If I had realized what would happen, I wouldn't have accepted the job.
→ Had _____
11. The response to our appeal was so great that we have to take on more staff.
→ Such _____
12. Harry broke his leg, and also injured his shoulder.
→ Not only _____
13. The police didn't at all suspect that the judge was the murderer.
→ Little _____
14. If you do happen to see Helen, could you ask her to call me?
→ Should _____
15. The bus driver can not be blamed for the accident in any way.
→ In _____
16. The snowfall was so heavy that all the trains had to be cancelled.
→ So _____
17. If the government raised interest rates. They would lose the election.
→ Were _____
18. As soon as I got into the bath, someone knocked at the door.
→ No sooner _____
19. There was so much uncertainty that the financial markets remained closed.
→ Such _____
20. It's not common for there to be so much rain in March.
→ Seldom _____
21. You won't be allowed in until your identity has been checked.
→ Only _____

22. Just after the play started there was a power failure.

→ Hardly _____

23. The Prime Minister has hardly ever made a speech as inept as this.

→ Rarely _____

24. We had only just arrived home when the police called.

→ Scarcely _____

25. Press photographers are banned from taking photographs backstage.

→ On no _____

26. The way so much money has been spent to so little purpose must be a record.

→ Never before _____

27. The judge was taken ill just after the trial proceedings began.

→ Barely _____

IX. Complete each sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

1.had we arrived at the hotel, when there was a power cut.

2.are members of staff to accept gratuities from clients.

3.Detective Dawson realized what she was to discover!.

4.so many employees taken sick leave at the same time.

5. to pay the full amount now, there would be a ten percent discount.

6. I supposed, as.....most people, that I would be retiring at 60.

7.the doctor seen more difficult case.

8.Jean win first prize, but she was also offered a promotion.

9.will late arrival be admitted to the theatre before the interval.

10.one missing child been found, than another three disappeared.

X. Complete each sentence with a suitable word or phrase.

1. Scarcelythe pilot had to make an emergent landing.

2. Littlewhat has been going on in her absent.

3. No soonertan I realized I'd left my bag on the platform.

4. Only whenon the light did we notice the hole of the ceiling.

5. Not until I asked a passer -by where I was.

6. Seldom doesbelow freezing at this time of the year.

7. Hardly his speech, when the minister interrupted.

8. On no account amwhile I am in a meeting.

9. Rarely hasthis school written a better composition.

10. In no way bear responsibility for injured passengers.

XI. Rewrite each sentences so that it contains the word or words in capitals, and so that the meaning stay the same.

1. Were Smith to resign, I might stand a chance of getting his job.

IF

.....

2. Such was the demand for the tickets that people queued day and night.

GREAT

.....

3. The money is not to be paid under no circumstances.

NO

.....

4. Three days passed before we arrived at the first oasis.

NOT UNTIL

.....

5. Hardly had the ship left port, than a violent storm developed.

SOON AFTER

.....

6. They would have discovered land sooner had they carried a compass

IF

.....

7. Little did Brenda know what she was letting herself in for.

IDEA

.....

8. It was only when I stopped that I realized something was wrong

DID I

.....

9. The accused never expressed regret for what he had done.

AT NO TIME

.....

10. So exhausted were the runners that none of them finished the race.

TOO.

XII. Rewrite these sentences with the adverbial phrase of direction or place at the front of clause. Use inversion where possible.

1. The people dived for cover as the bullets flew over their heads.

2. That night, just as John has predicted, a heavy snowfall came down.

3. The two men were talking in front of the station.

4. A line of police officers was behind the protesters.

5. A small stream ran at the end of the street. There was an overgrown garden across the stream.

6. She could hear the sound of the tractor and suddenly it came round the corner.

7. A white pillar was in front of them and a small, marble statue stood on top of it.

8. The teacher blew a whistle and the children ran off.

X. Complete each sentence with a suitable word or phrase.

UNIT 16

SPEAKING GIAO TIẾP



LÝ THUYẾT

1. Talking about likes and dislikes
2. Giving opinions
3. Making suggestions
4. Expressing agreement and disagreement
5. Giving opinions about plans
6. Asking for permission and giving reasons for refusal
7. Giving explanations of an event
8. Making friends
9. Expressing gratitude and responding to thanks
10. Apologies and regrets
11. Giving compliments
12. Giving advice
13. Interrupting politely
14. Evoking and expressing opinions

1. Talking about likes and dislikes

Useful expressions	
Likes	Dislikes
✓ I like ...	✓ I don't like ...
✓ I'd prefer ...	✓ I don't want ...
✓ It would be fun to ...	✓ I hate ...
✓ I really like ...	

2. Giving opinions

- ✓ In my opinion
- ✓ To my mind
- ✓ As I see it
- ✓ I would say that
- ✓ I don't believe that
- ✓ I wouldn't say that

3. Making suggestions

- ✓ What about ...?
- ✓ Why don't we ...?
- ✓ Shall we ...? Let's ...!
- ✓ We could ...
- ✓ It might be a good idea to ...
- ✓ I think you/we should ...
- ✓ It would be better if
- ✓ One thing you/ we could do is ...

4. Expressing agreement and disagreement

Agreement

- ✓ That's a good idea.
- ✓ Yes, let's do that.
- ✓ Great!
- ✓ I can't agree with you more.
- ✓ You're right. There's no doubt about that.
- ✓ That's true. I completely agree with you.
- ✓ I can't help thinking the same!
- ✓ Exactly, I'm with you there.

Disagreement

- ✓ Yes, but ...
- ✓ That's a good idea but ...
- ✓ Well, personally I think that ...
- ✓ That's an interesting point of view, but I think ...
- ✓ I don't quite agree because ...
- ✓ That's not the way I see it. You see ...
- ✓ That's not a good idea since ...
- ✓ Are you kidding me?

5. Giving opinions about plans:

- ✓ I agree/ disagree with you because ...
- ✓ That's a good idea. Moreover, I feel ...
- ✓ Do you think so? I don't think ...
- ✓ It may cause ...
- ✓ What will happen to ...?

6. Asking for permission and giving reasons for refusal:

Asking for permission	Giving reasons
✓ Is it all right if ...?	✓ Well, you see ...
✓ Would it be alright if ...?	✓ The reason is ...
✓ I wonder if ...	✓ It's sort of complicated, but you see ...
✓ Anybody mind if ...?	✓ ... and that's why I'd like to ...
	✓ Well, the thing is ...
	✓ It's because ...

7. Giving explanations of an event:

- ✓ It is famous because ...
- ✓ It is famous for ...
- ✓ It was one of the major ...
- ✓ It used to be ...
- ✓ Since it is ..., it has attracted ...
- ✓ It is well-preserved so that ...

8. Making friends:

A. Introducing yourself

- ✓ Hello/ Hi! I'm ... I'm from ...
- ✓ My name's ..., by the way.
- ✓ How do you do? I'm ... nice to meet you.

B. Checking if you know someone:

- ✓ Well, I don't think we've met. My name's ...
- ✓ Haven't I seen you at ...?
- ✓ You are a friend of ..., aren't you?

C. Making offers:

- ✓ How about ...?
- ✓ Can I get you something to drink?
- ✓ Could I get you a drink?
- ✓ Would you like something to drink?

D. Commenting on the situation:

- ✓ It's a great party, isn't it?
- ✓ Isn't it a great/ lovely party?
- ✓ The music sounds great, doesn't it?

9. Expressing gratitude and responding to thanks:

Expressions of gratitude	Responses to thanks
✓ Thank you very much for ...	✓ (It's) my pleasure.
✓ I'm very much obliged to you for ...	✓ Delighted I was able to help
✓ It's extremely good of you to ...	✓ It was the least we could do.
✓ I'm really grateful to you.	✓ You're welcome.

10. Apologies and regrets:

- ✓ I hope you'll forgive my ...
- ✓ Please accept my apologies for ...
- ✓ I apologize for ...
- ✓ Excuse me for ...
- ✓ I'm sorry. I didn't mean to ...
- ✓ I'm very/ really/ awfully/ terribly sorry ...
- ✓ Sorry about ...
- ✓ Oh! Sorry!

11. Giving compliments

Giving compliments	Responses to compliments	
✓ Amazing! You've made an excellent ...!	✓ I'm glad you like it.	
✓ Congratulations! You played ... so well!	✓ Thank you.	✓ Your compliment is encouraging.

- ✓ Your parents must be proud of your ...!
- ✓ Your little sister is so cute!
- ✓ How beautiful your ... is!
- ✓ You've done a good job!

✓ It's nice of you to say so.

12. Giving advice

- ✓ Well, I think ...
- ✓ Why don't you ...?
- ✓ Maybe you should ...
- ✓ If I were you, I'd ...
- ✓ You'd better ...

13. Interrupting politely

- ✓ Sorry to interrupt, but ...
- ✓ Excuse me for interrupting, but ...
- ✓ Can I say something here?
- ✓ Can I add something?
- ✓ Can I ask a question?
- ✓ May I ask something?
- ✓ Evoking and expressing opinions

14. Evoking and expressing opinions

Evoking opinions	Expressing opinions
✓ What do you think about ...?	✓ The point I'm making is ...
✓ What's your opinion on/ about ...?	✓ In my opinion, we must/ should/ need ...
✓ How do you feel about ...?	✓ It seems to me that ...
✓ Are you opposed to/ in favor of ...?	✓ I strongly believe/ think/ feel that ...
✓ I'd be interested to know your thoughts on ...	✓ Personally, frankly, I (don't) think ...

BÀI TẬP

1. "Let's chat online". – "....."
A. Not at all B. thank you C. good luck D. good idea
2. Hello, may I speak to Mr. Black, please?
A. I think so B. Hold on, please C. Goodbye D. I'd like to
3. "I'm terribly sorry for stepping on your foot". "....."
A. Don't say that B. Never mind
C. You're welcome D. That's right
4. "I'd like to take two weeks' holiday". "..... We have too much work to do."
A. Don't worry B. Pardon me
C. Forget it D. Don't mention it
5. "Look! This sweater is beautiful." ".....?"
A. Why not trying it on B. Why not try on it
C. Why not try it on D. Why not trying on it
6. "Shall we have a drink when you finish your talk?" "....."
A. No, you can't B. All right
C. You're welcome D. You needn't do that
7. "Bob, it's getting cold take a jacket with you?" "All right, daddy"
A. Why not B. What about
C. would you like D. You'd better
8. "May I borrow your ruler" "certainly,....."
A. Hold on, please B. It doesn't matter
C. Here you are D. Not at all
9. "Congratulations to you on passing the math exam." "....."
A. You're welcome B. Never mind
C. Don't mention it D. Thanks a lot
10. "Could you get to the park before 3 o'clock?" "..... I'm still at the meeting then"
A. I think so B. Yes, I could
C. I'm afraid not D. I'm afraid so

11. "....." "Thanks, I will."
A. Wish you a happy journey.
B. Give my best wishes to your parents
C. Thank you for your help.
D. You got the first prize. Congratulations!
12. "What is your father?" "He is"
A. tall B. in his office
C. an engineer D. going swimming
13. "Good morning, I'm Jack Brown, your new teacher."
"Good morning,"
A. Mr. Jack B. Mr. Brown
C. Teacher Jack D. Teacher Brown
14. "I lost my wallet on my way to school this morning."
".....! You must be careful next time."
A. Take care B. Excuse me
C. What a pity D. You're welcome
15. "Is Mary hungry?" "..... If so, she'll tell us."
A. I beg your pardon? B. Yes, of course
C. I don't think so D. Let's go and have a look.
16. "Excuse me; can I book a ticket for Paris?" "....."
A. Hurry up B. Thank you
C. Never mind D. Certainly
17. "I passed the driving test yesterday." ".....!"
A. With pleasure B. Congratulations
C. Have a good time D. You're welcome
18. ".....?" "Sorry, he has gone to Japan. But he will be back in two days."
A. Who is Jack B. May I speak to Jack
C. How is Jack today D. What's wrong with Jack
19. "I haven't seen Jack for three days. Is he ill?"
"..... His mother told me that he was in hospital."
A. I'm afraid so B. I hope not
C. I don't expect D. I am afraid not

20. ".....?" "He is tall and thin."
A. What is Jack like B. How is Jack
C. Is Jack short D. What's Jack

21. "What can I do for you, Madam?" "....."
A. Thank you B. all right
C. Some apples D. It's nice of you

22. When you go to your friends at night, you greet. ".....!"
A. Good morning B. Good noon
C. Good evening D. Good night

23. "My mother is ill in hospital." "....."
A. I don't think so B. Oh, she is unlucky
C. No problem D. I'm sorry to hear that

24. "Shall we go boating tomorrow?"
"..... The weather report says a storm is coming".
A. I'm afraid we can't B. Sure
C. That's a good idea. D. That's a deal

25. "Excuse me, which is the way to the post office?" "Sorry, I'm new here."
"....."
A. Not at all B. Bad luck
C. That's true D. Thank you all the same

26. "What is Johnson's family like?" "....."
A. His family is just like me
B. They all like sports and games
C. Oh, it's really a big one
D. They are all warm-hearted and helpful

27. "Can I speak to Mr. Johnson, please?" "....."
A. I'm Mr. John B. Hold on please
C. No, you can't D. Yes, you can.

28. "How much meat do you want?" "....."
A. Sorry, there isn't any
B. I can't give you any
C. Half a kilo please
D. Twelve Yuan a kilo

29. "Do you mind me smoking here?" "..... look at the sign. It says, 'no smoking'"
A. It doesn't matter B. No, I don't
C. You'd better not D. Never mind

30. "Would you like some more chicken?" "..... I'm full."
A. Yes, please B. No, thanks
C. Yes, I would D. No, I wouldn't

31. "Sam, I passed the exam." "Did you?"
A. Congratulations B. Good idea
C. Best wishes D. With pleasure

32. "I'm sorry; I've broken your glasses." "..."
A. It's OK B. Don't be sorry
C. You are welcome D. That's nothing

33. "Can I get some chalk for you, Mr. Smith? "....."
A. Not at all B. With pleasure
C. No problem D. That's very nice of you

34. "My wife is ill and I can't go to work today." "....."
A. You should look after her
C. It's doesn't matter
D. It's nothing serious

35. "I'll go fishing this weekend." "....."
A. Can't you fish?
C. what about more fish?
D. Have a good time

36. "Hi, Bob. How's your family?" "....."
A. Fine, thank you
C. Not at all
D. They're having breakfast

37. "Did anybody go out?" "..... I didn't see any body go out."
A. I can't say
C. I hope not
D. I don't think so

38. "Can you stay here longer?" "....., but I have to be back tomorrow."
A. No problem
C. I'd love to
D. No, thank you

39. "Excuse me, where is the post office?" "....."
A. Come this way, please
B. let me see
C. that's all right
D. With pleasure

40. "Your dress is just wonderful." "....."
 A. You are right, thank you
 B. thank you, and you?
 C. No, no yours is better
 D. Thank you, I'm glad to hear that
41. "Don't pick flower in the school garden next time, Lili" "....."
 A. I have no idea
 B. Sorry, I won't
 C. Is that so?
 D. Don't worry
42. "Hi, Bill! Congratulations!" "....."
 A. All right
 B. You are right
 C. That's good
 D. Thank you
43. "Don't forget to give my best wishes to your mother." "....."
 A. No, I won't
 B. OK, I will
 C. Yes, I won't
 D. Yes, I do.
44. "I'm going a trip to Long Hai after the exam." "Really?....."
 A. Have a nice time
 B. Congratulations
 C. OK
 D. It's nice of you
45. "Can I get you something to drink?" ".....I'm thirsty."
 A. Yes, please
 B. No, thank you
 C. You're welcome
 D. Here you are
46. "Five plus four is ten." "....."
 A. Don't forget
 B. That's right
 C. Well done
 D. Sorry, it's wrong
47. "Could you look after my baby while I'm away?" "....."
 A. With pleasure
 B. It's doesn't matter
 C. That's all right
 D. Thank you
48. "Waiter!" "....." "I can't eat this, it's too sweet."
 A. OK!
 B. All right
 C. Yes?
 D. Pardon
49. "Excuse me, would you please tell me.....?"
 "Certainly. Go straight along here; it's next to a hospital."
 A. How we can get to the post office
 B. How can we get to the post office?
 C. How get to the post office
 D. How could we get to the post office?

50. "..... The traffic is moving fast!" "Thanks, I will"
 A. Stop
 B. Look out
 C. Watch
 D. Don't move
51. "Would you like to go hiking with us?" "....."
 A. No, I don't like
 B. I hate to go hiking
 C. I'd love to, but I don't feel well today
 D. yes, I'd like
52. "I've got an offer in New York." - "Oh, but I'm going to miss you."
 A. That's too bad
 B. I'm sorry
 C. I beg your pardon
 D. That's great
53. "Your dress is very beautiful, Mary" "....."
 A. Not at all
 B. Just so-so
 C. No, it's isn't
 D. Thank you
54. "Good luck and have a nice weekend." "..... bye-bye"
 A. The same to you
 B. You have it too
 C. You are too
 D. The same as you
55. "Happy Teacher's Day. Miss Lan!" "....."
 A. You are so kind
 B. I'm so happy
 C. Thank you
 D. It's very good
56. "I won the high jump yesterday." "....."
 A. It's a small thing
 B. That's all
 C. I hope so
 D. Congratulations to you!
57. "Could you come, please? I want some help." "....."
 A. Yes, I could
 B. You're welcome
 C. Sure, I'm coming now
 D. That's right
58. When you stand outside the house and hear someone asking "Who is it?", you say:
 A. It's me
 B. That's me
 C. This is me
 D. Of course, I'm here
59. Your friend told you his mother was ill, you say:
 A. I'm sorry to hear that
 B. It doesn't matter
 C. Let's take her to hospital
 D. I hope it's nothing serious.

60. Your teacher is reading a book. You want to ask her a question. You say:

- A. By the way, may I ask a question?
- B. I'm sorry, I ask a question
- C. Excuse me. May I ask you a question?
- D. Hi, I'll ask you a question.

61. When someone says "I'm sorry" to you, you say:

- A. No problem
- B. Don't be sorry again
- C. You're welcome
- D. It doesn't matter

62. The telephone rings but it is someone who has a wrong number, you put the phone down after saying:

- A. I'm afraid you've got the wrong number.
- B. This is the wrong number speaking
- C. Why don't you try again?
- D. Wrong number, please.

63. Your friend says to you, "my radio won't work. What shall I do?" You reply:

- A. Take it back to the shop.
- B. Please have it repaired
- C. I can't do that
- D. I'm afraid not.

64. "How is John's homework done?" "....."

- A. Quite well
- B. Good
- C. Well, let's wait for a while
- D. Do it yourself

65. "Have a cup of tea." "....."

- A. I don't want to
- B. No, go away
- C. I don't have it
- D. No, thank you

66. ".....? " "yes, a bit cold, though."

- A. Cold weather, isn't it?
- B. Bad weather, don't you think
- C. Freezing, isn't it
- D. Nice day, isn't it

67. "Will you come to our party tonight?" "....., but I'll have an important meeting."

- A. I like it
- B. I will come
- C. I'd like coming
- D. I'd love to

68. "Do you think they will fail in the examination?" "No,"

- A. I hope not so
- B. I don't think so
- C. I don't hope
- D. I think not

69. "Isn't your uncle a doctor?" "....."

- A. No, he is
- B. Yes, he isn't
- C. No, he isn't
- D. Yes, he does

70. "Would you mind if I use your dictionary?" "Of course not,"

- A. Don't do that
- B. I'm sorry I can't
- C. It's over there
- D. I have a dictionary

71. "Please remember me to your parents." "....."

- A. No, thanks
- B. That's all right
- C. Never mind
- D. Sure

72. "How are things going with you?" "....."

- A. Quite well, thank you
- B. Don't ask me the problem.
- C. Good, and you?
- D. Please to tell you

73. ".....?" "a little"

- A. Shall we speak German
- B. Do you speak German
- C. Would you mind speaking German
- D. What language do you speak

74. "Will you be able to come to the party?" "....."

- A. I believe yes
- B. I'm afraid not
- C. I don't hope so
- D. I hope that

75. "It's kind of you to give me a ride to the station?" "....."

- A. Not at all. It was a pleasure
- B. never mind
- C. It doesn't matter
- D. Don't mention it

76. "did you have a good trip?" "....."

- A. Thank you, good
- B. I like that very much
- C. Yes, thanks. It's was fine
- D. Oh, it is so good

77. "Will you speak a little more softly?" "....."

- A. Yes, I'll do that
- B. Certainly, I can
- C. I'm sorry for that
- D. Thank you

78. "How do you like the film?" "....."

- A. It began at four
- B. yes, I'll see it again
- C. There is a clever boy in it.
- D. It's very interesting

79. "John, could you do something for me, please?"

- What would you like me to do?"
- A. Excuse me
- B. Sorry
- C. Certainly
- D. Don't worry

80. "....." "Yes, how much is this shirt?"
 A. How do you do? B. May I help you?
 C. Here you are D. Is this shirt yours?
81. "Would you go there with me?" "....."
 A. Sorry, I would B. Certainly, I would be glad to
 C. Of course, I shall not go with you D. Excuse me, I would not
82. "I'm sorry I'm late" "....."
 A. That's all right B. All right
 C. Don't mind it D. You are welcome
83. "Mr. Smith, I'd like you to meet Mr. Matt, my friend." "....."
 A. Hello, how are you
 B. Hello, how are you going
 C. Hi, how are you getting on
 D. How do you do? Nice to meet you.
84. "I'm afraid I must be off now." "....."
 A. Never mind B. See you
 C. No problem D. Step slowly
85. "Is it easier to watch TV now?" "....."
 A. Yes, I think so B. Yes, very
 C. No, I think so D. No, not very
86. "Many thanks to you, Kate" "...."
 A. Don't say so
 B. It doesn't matter
 C. No thanks
 D. It's a pleasure
87. "....." "it's doesn't matter."
 A. Sorry, I'm late.
 B. What a pity!
 C. It's very nice.
 D. Can I help you?
88. "May I take a seat here?" "....."
 A. I'm not sure
 B. Yes, do please
 C. That's a good idea
 D. I'm glad you do.
89. "Let me introduce myself. I'm John." "....."
 A. I'm very pleased
 B. Please to meet you
 C. It's my pleasure
 D. what a pleasure

90. "Why not go and have dinner in a restaurant?" "....."
 A. I agree B. Why not?
 C. I'm sure D. I'm afraid not
91. "Hi, I'm glad to see you." "....."
 A. My name is John
 B. Thank you
 C. Me, too
 D. I'm glad to hear that
92. "I haven't seen you for ages! You look fine."
 "....., you look well too"
 A. Great B. Thank you C. Oh, no D. Not at all
93. "....." "I'd like to see that red dress."
 A. What do you like B. do you want anything
 C. What can I do for you D. What will you do
94. "Thank you very much for your help." "....."
 A. It's quite OK B. That's right
 C. I'd love to D. You're welcome
95. "....." "it's doesn't matter."
 A. Sorry, I'm late
 B. What a pity
 C. It's very nice
 D. Can I help you
96. "How about a game of chess?" "....."
 A. I agree B. I don't mind C. Why not? D. That's right
97. "Must we take a bus" "No, you..... You can walk from here."
 A. Must not B. Don't must
 C. Don't have to D. Better not
98. "....." "Very well, thank you. And you?"
 A. Good night
 B. How do you like English
 C. How are you?
 D. How do you do?
99. "Hello, may I speak to John Smith?" "....."
 A. I'm John Smith
 B. My name is John Smith
 C. John Smith is me
 D. This is John Smith speaking.
100. "Sorry, I forgot to post the letter for you."
 "Never mind, it myself this afternoon."
 A. I'd rather post
 B. I'd better to post
 C. I'm going to post
 D. I'll post

120. David: "Merry Christmas!" – Jason: "_____"

- A. You are the same!
- B. Same for you!
- C. The same to you
- D. Happy Christmas with you!

121. A: _____? – B: Once a week

- A. How often do you go shopping
- B. How much do you want
- C. Are you sure
- D. When will you get there

122. A: "Sorry I'm late." – B: "_____"

- A. OK
- B. Don't worry
- C. Hold the line, please
- D. Go ahead

123. A: "Good morning. My name is Turner. I have a reservation."

- B: "_____"
- A. What do you want?
 - B. Yes, a single room for two nights
 - C. I haven't decided yet. What about you?
 - D. What do you like?

124. We all said, " _____!" before Ba blew out the candles on his birthday cake.

- A. Happy anniversary
- B. Happy New Year
- C. Happy birthday to you
- D. Congratulations.

125. " You look nice in that red shirt"

- " _____"
- A. It's nice of you to say so
 - B. am I? Thanks.
 - C. Oh, poor me
 - D. I am interesting to hear that.

126. Let's jogging. " – Sorry. _____"

- A. I quite agree with you.
- B. Yes, let's do that.
- C. Great!
- D. That's a good idea, but I am busy

127. " Let's go to the movie now." – " Oh! _____."

- A. Good idea!
- B. I don't
- C. Why's that?
- D. I need it

128. Mary: " Whose bicycle is that?" Tom: " _____."

- A. No, it's over there
- B. It's Jane's
- C. It's just outside
- D. It's your

129. " I think married women should not go to work. How about you?" – " _____ nonsense!"

- A. What
- B. What a
- C. How
- D. How a

130. Peter: " How often do you go to school?" Harry: " _____."

- A. I go there early
- B. Everyday except Sunday
- C. I don't think so
- D. I go there by bus

131. A: " Could I speak to Susie May , please ?"

- B: "....."
- A. Speaking
 - B. Talking
 - C. Saying
 - D. Answering

132. " Do you mind if I use your bike ?"

- A. No, you don't
- B. Yes , It's my pleasure.
- C. Yes, you do
- D. No, you can use it

133. We said " " and Mai blew the candles on the cake.

- A. Happy anniversary
- B. Happy New Year
- C. Congratulations
- D. Happy birthday to you

134. A : " What can I do for you ?"

- A. No, You can't
- B. Thank you. I am just looking
- C. Yes. Do it please
- D. Thanks. I will do it

135. Shall we go for a walk ?

- A.What about go for a walk ?
- B.What about going for a walk ?
- C.What about going a walk ?
- D.What about going for walk ?

136- I'm sorry. It's late. I must go now. - _____

- A. You are welcome
- B. Good bye. See you soon
- C. Not at all
- D. Hello

137. What's the matter with you? _____

- A. I'm fine, thanks
- B. I've got a headache
- C. Are you free ?
- D. All are correct.

138- What a lovely hat you have! – Thanks. _____

- A. that's OK
- B. I don't care
- C. I'm glad you like it
- D. certainly

139- Ann: Do you think you'll get the job?- Mary: _____

- A. I know so
- B. Well, I hope so
- C. I think not
- D. Yes, that's right

140. A: Excuse me! What's the time?

B: Sorry. I.....

A. don't see

C. don't have a watch

A. Same for you!

C. Happy to you!

142. Anne: "Thanks for the nice gift!"

John: "....."

A. I'm glad you like it.

B. You're welcomed.

C. In fact, I myself don't like it.

D. But do you know how much it costs?

143. Why do you walk so fast ? _ I'm

A. in a hurry

C. must hurry

B. in hurry

D. must be hurry

144. "You missed a good chance in your career"

"Yes , I that job when Mr. Johnson offered"

A. must have taken

C. could have taken

B. should have taken

D. might have taken

145. "How much coffee is left in the pot ?" _ "....."

A. Not one

C. Nothing

B. Not some

D. None

146 "Would you like some more sugar?"

- "....."

A. Yes, I would

C. Yes, no more

B. No, thank you

D. No, just a little.

147. Peter: "I enjoy listening to pop music "

Maria: "

A. So do I

C. I don't

B. I'm, too

D. Neither do I

148. _ " Good morning. Can I help you?"

_ " Yes, please. a book about Vietnam."

A. I'd like

B. I buy

C. I will look

D. I could have

149. – " Shall I open the window?"

_ " _____".

A. No, please

C. Yes, please

B. No, not me

D. Yes, you shall

150. - " This bag is too heavy for me."

- " _____ you a hand then."

A. I'm giving

C. I'd give

B. I'm going to give

D. I'll give



LÝ THUYẾT

- ❖ Quy tắc phát âm
- ❖ Quy tắc tìm trọng âm

I. QUY TẮC PHÁT ÂM

A- PHÁT ÂM /S/

1. /s/: p, t, f, k, th (phụ âm vô thanh)
2. /iz/: x, c, ch, s, z, sh, gh (phụ âm hữu thanh)
3. /z/ các âm còn lại

B- PHÁT ÂM /ED/

1. /id/: t, d
2. /t/: k, p, f, s, ch, sh, h
3. /d/: các âm còn lại

II. QUY TẮC TÌM TRỌNG ÂM

A. Trọng âm rơi vào chính nó:

1. ee: degree, referee
2. eer: mountaineer, pioneer
3. ese: Vietnamese, Chinese

4. ain (v): remain, maintain

5. ique: technique, unique

6. esque: picturesque,

• NGOẠI LỆ: COMMITTEE, COFFEE

B. Trọng âm rơi vào âm trước nó:

1. ion: (ngoại lệ: TELEVISION)
2. ic, ics: (ngoại lệ: POLITICS, ARITHMETIC)
3. ial: artificial, essential
4. itive: sensitive, competitive
5. ious: delicious, spacious
6. ian: politician

C. Trọng âm rơi vào âm cách đó 2 âm:

1. ate: investigate, considerate
2. ary: literary, dictionary (ngoại lệ: DOCUMENTARY)
3. ite/ ute/ ude: institute
4. cy/ ty/ gy/ phy: democracy, photography, geology
5. al: critical, geological

D. Đôi với từ có 2 âm tiết:

1. Nếu là động từ, trọng âm rơi vào âm 2.
2. Nếu là tính từ và danh từ, trọng âm rơi vào âm 1.

Eg: record, import, increase, decrease, discount,....

E. Đôi với từ ghép:

1. Nếu là danh từ thì trọng âm rơi vào phần thứ 1.
2. Nếu là động từ, tính từ thì trọng âm rơi vào phần thứ 2.

Eg: gateway, comeback, breakdown,

F. Đôi với từ có từ 3 âm tiết trở lên:

- Trọng âm thường rơi vào âm thứ 3 kể từ sau tới.

Một số chú ý quan trọng

a. Phụ âm:

- Các phụ âm thường được kiểm tra là /s/, /z/, /iz/, /t/, /d/, .. Đề thi chỉ yêu cầu học sinh phân biệt các âm vô thanh và hữu thanh để làm tốt 5 âm đầu tiên, trong đó các âm vô thanh xuất hiện nhiều hơn, cụ thể là: /s/, /k/, /p/, /f/, /t/, . Khi ôn tập, lưu ý các từ tận cùng bằng ed, s, es.

- Lưu ý với những từ có các kí tự “ch”, “gh” và “t”:

+ “ch” thường được phát âm nhung có khi là âm /k/.

A. scholar B. aching C. chemist D. approach

A. chemist B. chair C. cheap D. child

A. chemist B. teacher C. children D. kitchen

+ “gh” thường được phát âm là /f/ nhung có khi chỉ là âm câm.

A. cough B. weight C. might D. though

+ “t” thường được phát âm là /t/ nhung có trường hợp là /s/

A. initiate B. contain C. domestic D. attentive

b. Nguyên âm:

Các từ có kí tự “i”, “ea” và “y” thường được kiểm tra.

+ “i” được phát âm /ai/ và /i/, trong đó /i/ thường là đáp án.

A. promise B. despite C. economize D. enterprise

A. might B. lift C. sign D. light

A. climate B. village C. kindness D. climbing

A. mine B. file C. mile D. machine

+ “ea” được phát âm /i:/ và /e/, trong đó /e/ thường là đáp án.

A. already B. ease C. appeal D. team

A. please B. peace C. weather D. meal

+ “y” được phát âm /ai/ và /i/, trong đó /i/ thường là đáp án.

A. accompany B. simplify C. supply D. qualify

Bên cạnh đó còn có các âm /əʊ/ và /aʊ/ trong “ow”, và trong “oo”.

A. how B. slow C. power D. town

A. food B. good C. noodle D. moon

BÀI TẬP

A. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. a. village | b. dangerous | c. gossip | d. passenger |
| 2. a. <u>which</u> | b. <u>changeable</u> | c. <u>each</u> | d. <u>characteristic</u> |
| 3. a. <u>pasture</u> | b. <u>acquaintance</u> | c. <u>constant</u> | d. <u>talkative</u> |
| 4. a. <u>uncertain</u> | b. <u>tell</u> | c. <u>pursuit</u> | d. <u>picture</u> |
| 5. a. <u>chore</u> | b. <u>machine</u> | c. <u>much</u> | d. <u>such</u> |
| 6. a. <u>game</u> | b. <u>bridge</u> | c. <u>against</u> | d. <u>garage</u> |
| 7. a. <u>generous</u> | b. <u>gene</u> | c. <u>generally</u> | d. <u>giving</u> |
| 8. a. <u>cheese</u> | b. <u>children</u> | c. <u>chemical</u> | d. <u>teacher</u> |
| 9. a. <u>machinery</u> | b. <u>march</u> | c. <u>cheerfully</u> | d. <u>merchant</u> |
| 10. a. <u>page</u> | b. <u>message</u> | c. <u>danger</u> | d. <u>ringer</u> |
| 11. a. <u>language</u> | b. <u>happen</u> | c. <u>experience</u> | d. <u>know</u> |
| 12. a. <u>sing</u> | b. <u>glance</u> | c. <u>turn</u> | d. <u>sneaky</u> |
| 13. a. <u>note</u> | b. <u>next</u> | c. <u>finger</u> | d. <u>expensive</u> |
| 14. a. <u>money</u> | b. <u>link</u> | c. <u>down</u> | d. <u>point</u> |
| 15. a. <u>around</u> | b. <u>hand</u> | c. <u>nothing</u> | d. <u>autumn</u> |
| 16. a. <u>happy</u> | b. <u>husband</u> | c. <u>have</u> | d. <u>hour</u> |
| 17. a. <u>iron</u> | b. <u>celebrate</u> | c. <u>parents</u> | d. <u>restaurant</u> |
| 18. a. <u>who</u> | b. <u>how</u> | c. <u>which</u> | d. <u>whose</u> |
| 19. a. <u>friend</u> | b. <u>anniversary</u> | c. <u>birthday</u> | d. <u>cream</u> |
| 20. a. <u>children</u> | b. <u>divorce</u> | c. <u>married</u> | d. <u>present</u> |
| 21. a. <u>her</u> | b. <u>honour</u> | c. <u>hold</u> | d. <u>home</u> |
| 22. a. <u>bring</u> | b. <u>every</u> | c. <u>remember</u> | d. <u>party</u> |
| 23. a. <u>girl</u> | b. <u>card</u> | c. <u>for</u> | d. <u>pretty</u> |
| 24. a. <u>when</u> | b. <u>whom</u> | c. <u>whole</u> | d. <u>whoever</u> |
| 25. a. <u>rhyme</u> | b. <u>behind</u> | c. <u>hundred</u> | d. <u>here</u> |
| 26. a. <u>invited</u> | b. <u>attended</u> | c. <u>celebrated</u> | d. <u>displayed</u> |
| 27. a. <u>neighbours</u> | b. <u>friends</u> | c. <u>relatives</u> | d. <u>photographs</u> |
| 28. a. <u>happy</u> | b. <u>house</u> | c. <u>hour</u> | d. <u>hold</u> |

29. a. childless b. watching c. machine d. choose
 30. a. none b. ink c. blown d. brand
 31. a. war b. work c. world d. whom
 32. a. use b. umbrella c. under d. utter
 33. a. winter b. answer c. award d. towards
 34. a. lawn b. allow c. drawing d. swimmer
 35. a. student b. education c. united d. truck
 36. a. sword b. sweat c. swing d. swallow
 37. a. mow b. know c. dawn d. window
 38. a. summer b. club c. computer d. but
 39. a. suffer b. unhappy c. cup d. uniform
 40. a. who b. where c. when d. why
 41. a. campaign b. people c. population d. pneumonia
 42. a. number b. able c. climber d. about
 43. a. psychology b. prepare c. problem d. promote
 44. a. comb b. combine c. combat d. combust
 45. a. job b. bomb c. back d. before
 46. a. two b. twenty c. twist d. twice
 47. a. competition b. competitor c. contest d. question
 48. a. twinkle b. twelve c. twin d. twofold
 49. a. sponsored b. answered c. enjoyed d. competed
 50. a. smoothly b. three c. enthusiasm d. think

B. Choose the word whose primary stress is different from others.

51. a. biologist b. counterpart c. compliment d. kindergarten
 52. a. applicant b. maximum c. category d. inflation
 53. a. renovation b. telecommunication
 c. intervention d. expedition
 54. a. spinifex b. bamboo c. rainfall d. wildlife
 55. a. personality b. rhinoceros c. gorilla d. opponent
 56. a. leftovers b. windsurfing c. enthusiast d. scoreboard
 57. a. epidemic b. tsunami c. precision d. involvement
 58. a. struggle b. rubbish
 c. nonsense d. commitment

59. a. nursery b. certificate c. curriculum d. investment
 60. a. subsidy b. inhabitant c. guideline d. tableland
 61. a. incredible b. unexpected c. unnoticed d. outstanding
 62. a. overwhelming b. intellectual c. interesting d. economic
 63. a. inaccurate b. illegal c. positive d. domestic
 64. a. confident b. eternal c. dangerous d. healthier
 65. a. independent b. academic c. compulsory d. unexpected
 66. a. secondary b. immediate c. miraculous d. domestic
 67. a. simple b. polite c. formal d. instant
 68. a. beautiful b. terrific c. wonderful d. marvelous
 69. a. conical b. different c. symbolic d. careful
 70. a. cultural b. mischievous c. interesting d. responsible
 71. a. finance b. service c. order d. company
 72. a. interview b. agency c. addition d. customer
 73. a. prisoner b. agency c. exercise d. disaster
 74. a. personality b. centenarian c. wilderness d. hesitation
 75. a. desert b. acacia c. antelope d. jackal
 76. a. picture b. number c. water d. advice
 77. a. series b. stability c. precision d. canoeing
 78. a. podium b. title c. childbearing d. pioneer
 79. a. generation b. marriage c. value d. belief
 80. a. police b. spirit c. banquet d. culture
 81. a. determine b. maintain c. sacrifice d. apologize
 82. a. accompany b. eliminate c. reaffirm d. contribute
 83. a. swallow b. survive c. digest d. present
 84. a. initiate b. advocate c. contribute d. accelerate
 85. a. neglect b. rewrite c. eject d. oblige
 86. a. scary b. dissolve c. expand d. reform
 87. a. manage b. recognize c. argue d. discriminate
 88. a. entertain b. understand c. recommend d. develop
 89. a. offer b. listen c. precede d. follow
 90. a. interview b. appropriate c. employ d. describe
 91. a. support b. fascinate c. accept d. believe

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 92. a. inform | b. appeal | c. attempt | d. hesitate |
| 93. a. integrate | b. defeat | c. advise | d. compete |
| 94. a. engrave | b. categorise | c. memorialize | d. discover |
| 95. a. endanger | b. compose | c. flourish | d. delight |
| 96. a. abandon | b. imprison | c. reveal | d. mingle |
| 97. a. create | b. resurface | c. dial | d. persuade |
| 98. a. stimulate | b. subtract | c. announce | d. maintain |
| 99. a. explore | b. harrow | c. require | d. destroy |
| 100. a. entrap | b. compose | c. approach | d. alternate |

KEY

I. NOUNS - DANH TỪ

1. Give plural form of the following nouns

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. Babies | 2. Children | 3. Countries | 4. Aircraft |
| 5. Feet | 6. Keys | 7. Kilos | 8. Women |
| 9. Leaves | 10. loaves | 11. Men | 12. Photos |
| 13. Pianos | 14. Sheep | 15. Shelves | 16. Storeys |
| 17. Stories | 18. Thieves | 19. Teeth | 20. Wives |

2. Circle the correct answer

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 1. Are | 2. Is |
| 3. Was | 4. Lead |

II. ADJECTIVE - TÍNH TỪ

Put the adjectives into the correct order:

1. A heavy old leather case
2. Her new blue dress
3. Expensive handmade shoes
4. A nice sharp carving knife
5. A noisy little English car
6. A lovely sunny day

III. ADVERB - TRẠNG TỪ

1. What kind of adverb is each of the following?

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Adv of manner | 2. Adv of frequency |
| 3. Adv of place | 4. Adv of degree |
| 5. Adv of manner | 6. Adv of place |
| 7. Adv of manner | 8. Adv of degree |
| 9. Adv of time | 10. Adv of frequency |

2. Write the adverb from these adjectives:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. Gently | 2. Angrily |
| 3. Sincerely | 4. Beautifully |
| 5. Sensibly | 6. Truly |
| 7. Happily | 8. Immediately |
| 9. Legibly | 10. Simply |
| 11. Easily | 12. Carefully |

IV. MÃO TỪ

A.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. the | 18. The / the | 34. The / the |
| 2. The/the | 19. an / X / the | 35. X / a |
| 3. X / X | 20. X / X | 36. the / X |
| 4. a / X / X / X | 21. X / X | 37. X / an |
| 5. The / the | 22. the | 38. the / the / X |
| 6. the / a / a | 23. X / the | 39. X / the |
| 7. X / the | 24. The / the / X | 40. X / the |
| 8. a / X / the | 25. X / the | 41. X / the |
| 9. X / the | 26. The / the (or a) | 42. X |
| 10. X | 27. the | 43. X / an |
| 11. X / X / the | 28. X | 44. X / the |
| 12. the / the | 29. a / X | 45. a / a / the / the |
| 13. X | 30. X / X | 46. the / the |
| 14. the / X | 31. X / the | 47. X / a / X |
| 15. the / an | 32. X / a | 48. X |
| 16. X | 33. the | |
| 17. The | | |

B.

- | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. C | 3. B |
| 4. D | 5. C | 6. C |
| 7. A | 8. D | 9. D |
| 10. C | 11. C | 12. B |

13. A

14. A

15. A

16. D

17. D

18. C

V. PREPOSITIONS - GIÓI TỪ**A.**

- | | | | |
|----------|---------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. at | 10. of | 19. to | 28. about |
| 2. on | 11. with / at | 20. on | 29. after |
| 3. until | 12. at (by) | 21. with | 30. of/about |
| 4. in | 13. at (by) | 22. with | 31. for |
| 5. for | 14. of | 23. for | 32. from |
| 6. in | 15. of | 24. about | 33. out |
| 7. for | 16. until | 25. on | 34. for |
| 8. to | 17. to | 26. into | 35. about/of |
| 9. by | 18. for | 27. on | |

B.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1. B | 21. A | 41. C | 61. C | 81. A |
| 2. B | 22. A | 42. C | 62. C | 82. D |
| 3. D | 23. D | 43. A | 63. A | 83. D |
| 4. D | 24. D | 44. A | 64. A | 84. B |
| 5. C | 25. B | 45. B | 65. B | 85. B |
| 6. A | 26. C | 46. A | 66. D | 86. C |
| 7. C | 27. C | 47. B | 67. B | 87. B |
| 8. A | 28. B | 48. D | 68. D | 88. A |
| 9. B | 29. B | 49. A | 69. A | 89. B |
| 10. C | 30. A | 50. B | 70. B | 90. D |
| 11. A | 31. B | 51. C | 71. C | 91. A |
| 12. B | 32. A | 52. A | 72. B | 92. B |
| 13. C | 33. B | 53. D | 73. D | 93. D |
| 14. D | 34. A | 54. D | 74. D | 94. D |
| 15. D | 35. C | 55. B | 75. A | 95. A |
| 16. A | 36. C | 56. C | 76. A | 96. A |
| 17. B | 37. C | 57. C | 77. C | 97. A |
| 18. C | 38. D | 58. B | 78. A | 98. C |
| 19. A | 39. D | 59. B | 79. B | 99. D |
| 20. D | 40. C | 60. A | 80. C | 100. C |

UNIT 2: TENSES – CÁC THÌ**A.**

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. are - reach | 2. comes |
| 3. came - had left | 4. has never flown |
| 5. have just decided -would undertake | 6. would take |
| 7. was | 8. am attending - was attending |
| 9. arrive -will be waiting | 10. had lived |
| 11. got- had already arrived | 12. will see - see - will have graduated |
| 13. visited -was | 14. has been lying- haven't you read |
| 15. is washing - has just repaired | 16. have you been - spent |
| 17. have never met - looks | 18. will have been- comes |
| 19. found – had just left | 20. arrive – will probably be raining |
| 21. is raining - stops | 22. were watching - failed |
| 23. stayed – had lived | 24. sat – were being repaired |
| 25. turned – went – had forgotten | 26. has changed - came |
| 27. were talking – started - broke | 28. had done |
| 29. has been standing | 30. have spent - got |
| 31. were - studied | 32. met – had been working |
| 33. had finished - sat | 34. has has been |
| 35. has been | |

B

- | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 10. A | 19. A | 27. A | 36. C |
| 2. B | 11. B | 20. D | 28. B | 37. B |
| 3. B | 12. A | 21. D | 29. B | 38. B |
| 4. A | 13. D | 22. D | 30. B | 39. A |
| 5. C | 14. A | 23. B | 31. D | 40. B |
| 6. A | 15. A | 24. C | 32. B | |
| 7. D | 16. C | 24. C | 33. C | |
| 8. A | 17. C | 25. B | 34. B | |
| 9. C | 18. B | 26. B | 35. C | |

- | | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 6. A | 11. B | 16. B | 21. B | 26. D |
| 2. B | 7. A | 12. D | 17. A | 22. A | 27. A |
| 3. D | 8. C | 13. B | 18. C | 23. C | 28. B |
| 4. B | 9. A | 14. C | 19. D | 24. A | 29. D |
| 5. B | 10. A | 15. B | 20. C | 25. A | 30. B |

UNIT 3: PASSIVE VOICE – THẺ BỊ ĐỘNG

A.

- Our exercises are corrected at home by the teacher.
- Ali's absence was worried by his mother.
- Several new schools are being built in our town.
- Great progress has been made in industry, science and medicine.
- A lion was killed by Sam last week.
- Your report must be handed in before the end of this month.
- The job had just been finished when the factory closed.
- That box hasn't been opened for the past hundred years.
- Are these letters going to be mailed soon?
- The report should have been finished yesterday.
- Researches on SIDA began to be carried out by scientists two years ago.
- He is said to be the richest man in our town. / It is said that he is the richest man in our town.
- You can be assured everything will be arranged in time.
- We are to pity rather than these homeless boys are despised.
- Nothing has been moved since you were sent away to be cured.

B.

- She fell into water because she was pushed.
- What ought to be done?
- It is time the cows were brought in.

4. What questions were set by the examiner?

- Something must be done for these poor men.
- No mistakes have been made.
- My question has not been properly answered.
- This child has been badly brought up.
- Jane was promised a prize (by the teacher) if she worked well.
- I have never been spoken to like that before.
- I hate being looked at.
- Lesson should be made more interesting for school children.
- I'd like to be read to.
- The house will be locked up for summer and looked after by the old gardener.
- Tortoises are said to live longer than elephants (It's said that tortoises live longer...)
- An orange cannot be eaten if it hasn't been peeled
- Don't let yourself be seen (Passive reflexive)
- Were you ever taught how to behave?
- I was surprised to hear you had been robbed .
- We ought to be told how much is expected of us.

C.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. D | 3. D | 4. D | 5. B |
| 6. B | 7. C | 8. D | 9. B | 10. B |
| 11. A | 12. B | 13. C | 14. D | 15. C |
| 16. C | 17. D | 18. A | 19. C | 20. D |
| 21. A | 22. D | 23. C | 24. A | 25. C |
| 26. D | 27. A | 28. D | 29. A | 30. B |

D.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. D | 3. C | 4. B | 5. B |
| 6. C | 7. A | 8. C | 9. D | 10. D |
| 11. A | 12. B | 13. D | 14. D | 15. D |
| 16. B | 17. B | 18. B | 19. A | 20. B |

UNIT 4: TAG QUESTIONS – CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI

A.

1. aren't you 6. does it 11. won't you 16. doesn't he
2. didn't he 7. shouldn't he 12. doesn't it 17. shall I
3. isn't there 8. shall we 13. did you 18. do you
4. won't she 9. haven't they 14. isn't it 19. are they
5. hasn't she 10. didn't we 15. does it 20. do they

B.

1. B 4. C 7. B 10. A 15. A 18. C
2. A 5. A 8. A 11. A 16. D 19. D
3. C 6. C 9. B 14. B 17. C 20. D

UNIT 5: ADVERBIAL CLAUSES AND CONNECTORS

- MÊNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ VÀ TỪ NÓI

1. B 31. A 61. C 91. C
2. B 32. D 62. B 92. A
3. D 33. B 63. C 93. B
4. B 34. D 64. C 94. A
5. A 35. D 65. A 95. D
6. D 36. B 66. C 96. C
7. D 37. B 67. C 97. D
8. C 38. C 68. B 98. C
9. C 39. D 69. D 99. B
10. B 40. A 70. B 100. B
11. B 41. A 71. B 101. D
12. B 42. A 72. C 102. B
13. B 43. D 73. D 103. B
14. C 44. A 74. A 104. D
15. A 45. A 75. C 105. A

16. A 46. B 76. A 106. C
17. A 47. B 77. C 107. A
18. B 48. C 78. A 108. A
19. B 49. D 79. C 109. D
20. A 50. A 80. C 110. B
21. C 51. A 81. C 111. B
22. A 52. D 82. C 112. D
23. C 53. C 83. C 113. B
24. D 54. B 84. A 114. D
25. B 55. B 85. A 115. C
26. C 56. C 86. A 116. B
27. A 57. C 87. B 117. D
28. D 58. B 88. C 118. B
29. D 59. B 89. A 119. C
30. C 60. C 90. B 120. A

UNIT 6: SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

- SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ

1. A 11. B 21. D 31. A 41. A
2. C 12. D 22. C 32. D 42. B
3. B 13. A 23. B 33. C 43. B
4. D 14. A 24. A 34. A 44. C
5. A 15. A 25. B 35. C 45. B
6. B 16. C 26. C 36. C 46. B
7. C 17. B 27. D 37. D 47. D
8. C 18. A 28. A 38. B 48. A
9. A 19. C 29. C 39. B 49. C
10. A 20. D 30. B 40. C 50. A

UNIT 7: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES

- CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN VÀ CÂU ƯỚC

A.

1. stopped/ would fly 2. smoke/will object
3. wouldn't your parent be 4. would have/hadn't spent
5. worked/would finish 6. had/would use
7. would take 8. won't let
9. didn't smoke 10. gave/would you do
11. freezes 12. would have warned
13. sees 14. resigned
15. had written 16. see
17. turn 18. wouldn't leave
19. would you say 20. get
21. weren't (wasn't) 22. were (was)
23. would be 24. listened
25. wouldn't be 26. were (was)
27. addressed 28. should have informed
29. would have gone 30. had seen
31. had seen 32. had
33. would become 34. had
35. hadn't bought

B.

1. She'd live in London if she knew someone there.
2. I'd live in the country if I could find a job there.
3. If I had a spare ticket, I'd take you to the concert.
4. If the school children had watered some seeds, they would have grown.
5. If they understood the problem, they'd find the solution.
6. If he didn't sit around too much, he'd be fit.
7. If Carol hadn't been studying, she'd have answered the phone.
8. If Rita had got some sleep last night, she wouldn't be exhausted today.

9. If she weren't/wasn't too thin, she wouldn't feel cold so much.

10. If he polished his shoes, he'd look smart.

11. If he could park near his office, he'd come by car.

12. If my house were/was guarded by two big dogs, it'd be broken into every night.

13. If the flats were clearly numbered, it'd be easy/wouldn't be difficult to find someone/anyone.

14. If I knew her e-mail address, I could tell you.

15. If she didn't work in the evening, she'd have time to play with her children.

16. They'd be upset if I told them what happened.

17. If I were/was tall enough, I would join the basketball team.

18. If he saw the signal, he'd stop his car.

19. If Peter prepared his lessons well, he wouldn't get bad marks/would get good marks.

20. If Mary had enough money, she'd buy a new car.

21. If you don't go right now, you'll be late for the train.

22. If he had enough qualifications, he'd apply for the job.

23. If we don't hurry, we'll be late for the exam.

24. If you often talked to them, they'd understand you.

25. If you spoke English naturally, they'd understand you.

C.

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 9. A | 17. C | 25. B |
| 2. A | 10. B | 18. B | 26. B |
| 3. A | 11. A | 19. A | 27. A |
| 4. B | 12. B | 20. B | 28. C |
| 5. D | 13. C | 21. B | 29. B |
| 6. A | 14. D | 22. A | 30. C |
| 7. B | 15. D | 23. B | 31. C |
| 8. C | 16. C | 24. C | 32. A |
| 33. B | 46. C | 59. B | 72. C |
| 34. A | 47. B | 60. B | 73. D |

35. A 48. D 61. B 74. C
 36. C 49. B 62. B 75. D
 37. B 50. A 63. A 76. A
 38. D 51. C 64. B 77. B
 39. A 52. B 65. C 78. C
 40. C 53. A 66. B 79. D
 41. C 54. D 67. D 80. A
 42. D 55. A 68. C 81. C
 43. D 56. B 69. A 82. C
 44. B 57. D 70. D 83. B
 45. C 58. A 71. D 84. D
 85. B

D.

86. A. (would) 93. D (build)
 87. C. (had) 94. A (have been)
 88. B (hadn't) 95. B. (had known)
 89. D (won't) 96. C (had given)
 90. C (will) 97. C (would)
 91. C. (wouldn't have broken) 98. A. (sent)
 92. C. (hadn't) 99. B (ordered)
 100. C (had)

UNIT 8: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

DANH ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THÊ

A.

1. B 21. A 41. A 61. A 81. B
 2. C 22. B 42. B 62. C 82. A
 3. A 23. A 43. C 63. D 83. B
 4. B 24. C 44. D 64. C 84. B
 5. B 25. D 45. B 65. B 85. C

6. B 26. C 46. C 66. C 86. A
 7. D 27. B 47. B 67. B 87. B
 8. B 28. C 48. C 68. A 88. D
 9. B 29. B 49. A 69. B 89. A
 10. D 30. D 50. C 70. D 90. D
 11. B 31. D 51. A 71. B 91. C
 12. C 32. C 52. D 72. B 92. A
 13. A 33. D 53. B 73. D 93. B
 14. B 34. B 54. B 74. C 94. C
 15. A 35. A 55. C 75. B 95. D
 16. D 36. B 56. A 76. B
 17. D 37. D 57. A 77. B
 18. C 38. A 58. B 78. A
 19. D 39. C 59. D 79. D
 20. D 40. B 60. D 80. C

B.

96. B 97. C 98. A 99. C 100. C 101. B 102. C 103. C 104. B 105. C

C.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. to go | 2. to come | 3. to be | 4. asking |
| 5. to smoke | 6. camping | 7. change | 8. drive |
| 9. preparing | 10. to renew | 11. stay | 12. to do |
| 13. to go | 14. to take | 15. to give | 16. to make |
| 17. making | 18. listening | 19. hurting | 20. not to make |
| 21. buying | 22. to have | 23. to phone | 24. ironing |
| 25. learning | 26. to give | 27. not to do | 28. building |
| 29. listening | 30. meeting | 31. to lend | 32. to give |
| 33. stopping | 34. getting | 35. to give | 36. wearing |
| 37. meeting | 38. not bringing | 39. to ask | 40. speaking |
| 41. revising | 42. cutting | 43. smoking | 44. to turn |

45. keeping 46. park 47. to put 48. to read
 49. to reach 50. telling 51. know 52. seeing
 53. cry 54. to write 55. taking 56. to inform
 57. to close 58. to wait 59. to ask 60. walking
- D.**
61. B (leaving) 62. C (working)
 63. B (to write) 64. B (playing/to play)
 65. B (to tell) 66. D (to meet)
 67. A (telling) 68. A (to write)
 69. A (reading) 70. B (telephoning)
 71. D (living alone) 72. C (to get)
 73. B (to send) 74. B (to buy)
 75. A (cleaning/to be cleaned)

UNIT 9: QUANTITATIVE WORD – TỪ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. C
 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. C
 11. B 12. D 13. C 14. A 15. B
 16. B 17. C 18. B 19. A 20. A
 21. A 22. C 23. A 24. A 25. A
 26. B 27. B 28. C 29. C 30. B
 31. B 32. B 33. A 34. A 35. B
 36. C 37. B 38. A 39. B 40. C
 41. A 42. B 43. C 44. B 45. A
 46. B 47. A 48. D 49. B 50. A

UNIT 10: PARTICIPE USED AS ADJECTIVE

- PHÂN TỪ DÙNG NHƯ TÍNH TỪ

- 1 interested 2. encouraged
 3. amusing 4. boring
 5. bored 6. excited
 7. amusing 8. boring – tired
 9. satisfied 10. interesting
 11. interested 12. exciting
 13. disappointed 14. surprising
 15. exciting 16. surprised
 17. astonishing 18. boring
 19. exciting 20. bored – boring

UNIT 11: RELATIVE CLAUSES – MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ

A.

- | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 11. B | 21. B | 31. A | 41. A | 51. A | 61. D |
| 2. C | 12. C | 22. A | 32. A | 42. C | 52. B | 62. D |
| 3. B | 13. C | 23. B | 33. D | 43. D | 53. A | 63. D |
| 4. D | 14. B | 24. B | 34. B | 44. A | 54. A | 64. A |
| 5. A | 15. D | 25. A | 35. B | 45. D | 55. C | 65. A |
| 6. A | 16. D | 26. D | 36. D | 46. A | 56. A | 66. D |
| 7. C | 17. D | 27. B | 37. B | 47. D | 57. B | 67. B |
| 8. C | 18. B | 28. C | 38. B | 48. B | 58. D | 68. D |
| 9. A | 19. D | 29. D | 39. B | 49. B | 59. D | 69. A |
| 10. B | 20. B | 30. B | 40. C | 50. B | 60. B | 70. D |

B.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. C | 3. C | 4. D | 5. B |
| 6. D | 7. C | 8. C | 9. C | 10. B |
| 11. A | 12. B | 13. C | 14. C | 15. D |
| 16. D | 17. B | 18. A | 19. C | 20. C |

1. There is someone knocking at the door.
2. Passenger travelling on planes shouldn't smoke.
3. The photograph taken by my son was extraordinary.
4. What can you do about a dog barking all night ?
5. Is there any good place for us to stay tonight?
6. We have an apartment overlooking the park.
7. The last person to leave the room must turn off the light.
8. Trains leaving from this station take an hour to get to London.
9. The experiment conducted at the university of Chicago was successful.
10. The ideas presented in that book are interesting.

1. I have to find the man whose umbrella I accidentally picked up this morning.
2. Monday is the day when we will come.
3. I'll never forget the day on which / when I met you.
4. The town where I grew up was small.
5. 1960 was the year in which / when the revolution took place.
6. I apologized to the woman whose coffee I spilled.
7. They 're the postcards which/that arrived yesterday.
8. The children sang aloud all night, which kept their parents awake.
9. Maria is studying in New York City, which is called the " Big Apple".
10. In the room, we saw a lot of children and pets that sang and danced happily.

- | | | | | | | |
|-------|--------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1.D | 11. A | 21. D | 31. A | 41. B | 51. C | 61. B |
| 2.D | 12. C | 22. B | 32. C | 42. D | 52. C | 62. D |
| 3.A | 13. A | 23. B | 33. D | 43. C | 53. B | 63. A |
| 4.B | 14. D | 24. C | 34 . C | 44. B | 54. D | 64. C |
| 5.B | 15. A | 25. D | 35. D | 45. A | 55. D | 65. B |
| 6.B | 16. B. | 26. A | 36. A | 46. C | 56. C | 66. A |
| 7. C | 17. B | 27. B | 37. D | 47. A | 57. C | 67. A |
| 8. C | 18. D | 28. C | 38. A | 48. D | 58. D | 68. B |
| 9. D | 19. C | 29. A | 39. C | 49. B | 59. A | 69. A |
| 10. D | 20. A | 30. C | 40. A | 50. A | 60. C | 70. C |

B. Change each of the following sentences into reported speech.

- 1) John said he wanted to attend a famous university.
- 2) Mary told Peter she was looking for the book he had given her the week before.
- 3) Alfred told John he had not not promised to send him a telegram.
- 4) She said she would get herself a drink.
- 5) He said he couldn't drive them home.
- 6) She asked Peter if/whether he preferred tea or coffee.
- 7) He said the film had begun at seven o'clock.
- 8) The father he had been on a business trip the whole day the day before
- 9) James said his brother would get married the following month.
- 10) Henry told his mother to come and spend a week with them.
- 11) He told me to keep a seat for him in the lecture hall.
- 12) Mike told Henry to give him his book back.
- 13) She told the boys not to play on the grass.
- 14) He told me not go too far.
- 15) He told me not to make so much noise.
- 16) The mother told her son not to move.
- 17) My sister told me not to open the window.

- 18) Jane asked Williams if he would be free the day after.
 - 19) Fred asked the postman if there were any letters that day.
 - 20) Richard asked the Browns what they were going to enter.
 - 21) She said she had been very tired.
 - 22) She told Ben to be careful.
 - 23) She says she will get herself a drink.
 - 24) He wondered why I hadn't phoned him.
 - 25) He said he could not drive them home.
 - 26) She asks Peter if he prefers tea or coffee.
 - 27) She asked me where I had spent my holiday the year before.
 - 28) He advised her not to go too far.
 - 29) He wanted to know if/whether we had been shopping.
 - 30) He asks us not to make so much noise.

UNIT 13: COMPARISONS – CÁC DẠNG SO SÁNH

A.

- 1) old - older - oldest
 - 2) bad - worse - worst
 - 3) difficult - more difficult
 - 4) large - larger - largest
 - 5) good - better - best
 - 6) big - bigger - biggest
 - 7) easy - easier - easiest
 - 8) much - more - most
 - 9) little - less - least
 - 10) interesting - more interesting

B.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1) as fast as | 7) as delicious as |
| 2) not as tall as | 8) not as sweet as |
| 3) not as low as | 6) not as windy as |
| 4) as bad as | 9) as brave as |
| 5) as optimistic as | 10) not as heavy as |

C

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1) heavier | 6) most beautiful |
| 2) easier | 7) larger |
| 3) sunniest | 8) less |
| 4) more successful | 9) cleverer |
| 5) softer | 10) oldest |

D

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. C | 3. C | 4. C | 5. D |
| 6. C | 7. A | 8. B | 9. C | 10. B |
| 11. A | 12. C | 13. B | 14. C | 15. C |
| 16. D | 17. B | 18. A | 19. C | 20. A |
| 21. B | 22. B | 23. C | 24. B | 25. C |
| 26. D | 27. C | 28. B | 29. A | 30. A |
| 31. A | 32. A | 33. C | 34. C | 35. B |
| 36. D | 37. A | 38. A | 39. B | 40. B |
| 41. A | 42. C | 43. C | 44. D | 45. D |
| 46. A | 47. A | 48. C | 49. A | 50. C |
| 51. A | 52. C | 53. B | 54. C | 55. B |
| 56. B | 57. C | 58. B | 59. B | 60. D |
| 61. B | 62. D | 63. C | 64. C | 65. B |
| 66. A | 67. C | 68. A | 69. C | 70. C |

E.

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. B | 11. C | 16. A |
| 2. C | 7. B | 12. B | 17. A |
| 3. B | 8. C | 13. D | 18. C |
| 4. C | 9. C | 14. A | 19. D |
| 5. B | 10. C | 15. A | 20. C |

E.

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. C
6. A 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. D

UNIT 14: COMMON STRUCTURES

- CÁC CÂU TRÚC CÂU THƯỜNG GẶP

A.

1)

The bridge was too low for the lorry to go under.

It was such a low bridge that the lorry couldn't go under it.

2)

My brother no longer walks to school with his friends.

No longer does my brother walk to school with his friends.

3) The policeman asked the little boy what his name was.

4) Your kitchen is bigger than mine.

5) I'll give you my phone number so that you can phone me when necessary.

6)

Because of getting up late, I couldn't come there on time.

If I had not got up late, I could come there on time.

I got up late so I couldn't come there on time.

7) I was advised to choose that job by my father.

8)

That boy is so clever that he can make children's toys.

That is such a clever boy that he can make children's toys.

9)

That pupil is so lazy that my sister can't teach him English.

That pupil is too lazy for my sister to teach him English.

10) I wish I had not bought the second-hand motorbike.

11)

She is thought to be the most beautiful girl in this class.

It is thought that she is the most beautiful girl in this class.

12) These explosives have to be kept in a safe place.

13) The film was so good that we decided to go and see it again.

14) Computers are being used in almost every field.

15) The thief drove so quickly that the police couldn't catch him.

16) Would you mind helping me to lift this heavy box up?

17) No sooner had someone rung the alarm than the burglars left the shop.

18) I haven't seen her for one week.

19) Hardly had he put down the phone when his wife rang back.

20) Because she was sick she stayed in bed.

21) If you had worked hard, you wouldn't have got bad marks.

22)

The shirt is so tight that the boy can't wear it.

The shirt is too tight for the boy to wear.

23)

Mary enjoys scientific expeditions, and so does Peter.

Peter enjoys scientific expeditions, and Mary does, too.

24) Mike drives more carefully than his brother.

25) If she hadn't worked hard, she wouldn't have got high wages.

26) If you don't phone me tonight, you won't get any information.

27) Tom used to cry a lot when he was a child.

28)

The problem is too difficult for him to solve.

It is such a difficult problem that he can't solve it.

The problem is so difficult that that he can't solve it.

29)

Why don't we go to the seaside this summer?

How about going to the seaside this summer?

I suggest going to the seaside this summer.

30) Our team was said to have won the gold medal by chance.

31) I wish I had not lent him much money.

32) If Mary had not drunk too much wine, she wouldn't have felt sick.

33) Unless you put on your coat, you will catch a cold.

34)

He couldn't afford to buy a car, and neither could she.

He couldn't afford to buy a car, and she couldn't, either.

35) In spite of the bad weather, we enjoyed our trip.

36) Because he was sleepy, he went to bed early.

37) Because of being very tired, I made a mistake.

38) Even though these cars are cheap, they last a long time.

39) Although it was noisy, the children slept well.

40) Because he was tired, he didn't walk to the station.

B.

- | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1) D | 11) D | 21) B | 31) A | 41) C | 51) D | 61) A | 71) D |
| 2) B | 12) B | 22) A | 32) B | 42) B | 52) D | 62) A | 72) B |
| 3) B | 13) D | 23) B | 33) B | 43) B | 53) B | 63) C | 73) A |
| 4) A | 14) C | 24) D | 34) C | 44) D | 54) D | 64) A | 74) D |
| 5) B | 15) C | 25) D | 35) C | 45) D | 55) D | 65) D | 75) D |
| 6) D | 16) B | 26) C | 36) D | 46) C | 56) A | 66) B | 76) A |
| 7) C | 17) D | 27) C | 37) B | 47) D | 57) B | 67) C | 77) D |
| 8) C | 18) B | 28) B | 38) C | 48) C | 58) D | 68) C | 78) A |
| 9) B | 19) C | 29) A | 39) C | 49) A | 59) A | 69) A | 79) B |
| 10) C | 20) A | 30) A | 40) D | 50) A | 60) D | 70) C | 80) B |

C.

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1) B | 11) B |
| 2) B | 12) B |
| 3) B | 13) A |
| 4) B | 14) A |
| 5) B | 15) A |
| 6) A | 16) A |
| 7) A | 17) A |
| 8) C | 18) C |
| 9) A | 19) A |
| 10) D | 20) B |

UNIT 15: INVERSION - SỰ ĐÁO NGỮ

I. Choose the most suitable words underlined.

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. he would never | 6. passed |
| 2. did I remember | 7. so high were the waves |
| 3. when | 8. Peter has arrived |
| 4. was I | 9. than |
| 5. was I aware | 10. should you leave early |

II. Rewrite these sentences, using NEVER.

1. Never before had she been so happy.
2. Never have I heard such nonsense!
3. Never in my life have I seen such a mess.
4. Never have our profits been higher than/ as higher as they are this year.
5. Never again would she trust her own judgment when buying antique.
6. Never before had the firm laid on such a sumptuous celebration.
7. Never have I come across such a horrifying film.
8. Never have I been so moved by a Shakespeare production.
9. Never for one moment did I think the consequences would be so far reaching.
10. Never before had I tasted such a wonderful combination of flavours.

III. Rewrite these sentences, using IN, AT, UNDER, or ON

1. In no way can Keith be held responsible for the accident.
2. In no way are the children themselves to blame for the disaster.
3. In no way is the existence of extraterrestrial life confirmed by the report.
4. At no time was I shown how to operate the machine.
5. At no time did he suspect that he was a witch.
6. At no time has the English language not been in a state of change.
7. Under no circumstance will Miss Weaver be offered the job.
8. Under no circumstance should you send money to us by post.
9. Under no circumstance can we exchange tickets.
10. On any account will I go all that way to visit him again.

IV. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with NOT

1. Not only is he your friend, but he's mine too.
2. Not only did he book tickets for the afternoon performance but he also booked for the evening performance as well.
3. Not only did the burglars steal a thousand pounds' worth of electrical goods, they also left the flat in an awful mess.
4. Not only was Tom late, but he had left all his books behind.
5. Not only will you enhance your posture but you will (also) improve your acting ability (as well) on this course.
6. Not for one moment is it worth considering his suggestion /is his suggestion worth considering.
7. Not a tear did she shed when the story ended in tragedy.
8. Not once did the manager offer is an apology.
9. Not a sound did she make as she crept upstairs.
10. Not until he retired did he think about having a holiday abroad.

V. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with ONLY

1. Only when I got home did I realize how dangerous the situation had been.
2. Only last week did the Agriculture Minister admit defeat.
3. Only after seeing Hamlet on the stage did I understand it.
4. Only after they had finished eating did they get round to business.
5. Only after they waited for twelve hours did their flight leave.
6. Only after did I realize who she was.
7. Only by (using) force could the door be opened.
8. Only when Tom's apologized will I agree.
9. Only when you buy all twelve books at the same time can/will you get the 40% discount.
10. Only by training hard can/will/could you become a good athlete.

VI. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with SHOULD.

1. Should the government be forced into another election, it would be the favorite to win.

2. Should you wish to make an appointment to see Dr Simons, she is available between 9.00 and 11.00.
3. Should you have further problems with your printer, contact your deal for advice.
4. Should you decide to accept the post, you will be Expected to start work on 1st April.
5. Should we hear any further news, we will be in touch immediately.
6. Should you wish to take advantage of the offer, kindly tick the box on your order.
7. Should the film be a box- office success, they may be a sequel.
8. Should you change your mind, there will always be a job for you here.

VII. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with WERE OR HAD

1. Were the chemical to leak, a large area of sea would be contaminated.
2. Were Germany to beat, they would face Italy in the final.
3. Were Mr Morgan still headmaster, he would not permit such bad behavior.
4. Had you given it in on time, you would have got a high mark.
5. Had she become a lawyer, as her parents' wishes, she would have earned a large salary.
6. Had anything gone wrong, I would have been held responsible.
7. Had it not been for Henry, I might not have met you.
8. Had the coast guards been notified they could have saved the vessels.
9. Had they confirmed by phone, the airline could have warned them.
10. Had it not been for his solicitor's advice, he would have made a serious mistake.

VIII. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.

1. Not only did he spend all his money but he also borrowed some from me.
2. No sooner had I left the office than the phone rang.
3. Hardly had I put the phone down when the boss rang back.
4. Not until the bell rang did he finish his work.

5. Only after several months did we begin to see the symptoms of the disease.
6. Never in my life have seen anyone drink as much as you.
7. Under the table was a sleeping dog lying.
8. Rarely had his brother been more excited.
9. Only later were all the facts made public.
10. Had I realized what would happen, I wouldn't have accepted the job.
11. Such was the responsible to our appeal that we has to take on more staff
12. Not only did Harry break his leg but he also injured his shoulder.
13. Little did the police suspect that the judgment was the murderer.
14. Should you see Helen, could you ask her to call me?
15. In no way can the bus be blamed for the accident.
16. So heavy was the snowfall that all the trains had to be cancelled.
17. Were the government to write interest rates they would lose the election.
18. No sooner had I got into the bath than someone knocked on the door.
19. Such was the uncertainty that the financial markets remained closed.
20. Seldom is there so much rain in March.
21. Only when your identity has been checked will you be allowed in.
22. Hardly had the play started when there was a power failure.
23. Rarely has the Prime Minister made so inept a speech.
24. Scarcely had we arrived home when the police called.
25. On no account are press photographers allowed to take photographs backstage.
26. Never before has so much money been spent to so little purpose!.
27. Barely had the trial proceedings begun when the judge was taken ill.

IX. Complete each sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Hardly/ Scarcely | 6. do |
| 2. Under no circumstances | 7. Never had /have |
| 3. Little did | 8. Not only did |
| 4. Never had / Rarely had | 9. Under no circumstances |
| 5. Were you | 10. No sooner had |

X. Complete each sentence with a suitable word or phrase. (Suggested answers)

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. had the plane taken off, when | 6. the temperature fall |
| 2. Does she know | 7. had he begun. |
| 3. had the train left | 8. I to be disturbed |
| 4. we turned. | 9. a pupil at this / a student from |
| 5. did I know | 10. does the company. |

XI. Rewrite each sentences so that it contains the word or words in capitals, and so that the meaning stay the same

1. If Smith were to resign , I might stand a chance of getting his job.
2. The demand for tickets was so great that people queued night and day.
3. Under no circumstances is the money to be paid.
4. Not until three days had passed did we arrive at the first oasis/ It was not until three days later that we arrived at the first oasis.
5. Soon after the ship left port , a violent storm developed.
6. If they had carried a compass they would have discovered the land sooner.
7. Brenda had no idea what she was letting herself in for.
8. Only when I stopped did I realize that something was wrong.
9. At no time did the accused express regret for what he has done.
10. The runners were too exhausted to finish the race.

XII. Rewrite these sentences with the adverbial phrase of direction or place at the front of clause. Use inversion where possible.

1. as over their heads flew the bullets.
2. down came a heavy snow.
3. In front of the station, the two men were talking.(no inversion)
4. Behind the protesters was a line of police officers.
5. At the end of the street ran a small stream. Across the stream was an overgrown garden.
6. and suddenly round the corner it came. (no inversion)

7. In front of them was a white pillar, and on top of it stood a small, marble statue.
 8.and off ran the children.

UNIT 16: SPEAKING – GIAO TIẾP

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. B | 4. C | 5. C |
| 6. B | 7. A | 8. C | 9. D | 10. C |
| 11. B | 12. C | 13. B | 14. C | 15. C |
| 16. D | 17. B | 18. B | 19. A | 20. A |
| 21. C | 22. C | 23. D | 24. A | 25. D |
| 26. D | 27. B | 28. C | 29. C | 30. B |
| 31. A | 32. D | 33. D | 34. B | 35. D |
| 36. A | 37. D | 38. C | 39. A | 40. D |
| 41. B | 42. D | 43. A | 44. A | 45. A |
| 46. D | 47. A | 48. C | 49. A | 50. B |
| 51. C | 52. D | 53. D | 54. A | 55. C |
| 56. D | 57. C | 58. A | 59. A | 60. C |
| 61. D | 62. A | 63. B | 64. A | 65. D |
| 66. D | 67. D | 68. B | 69. C | 70. C |
| 71. D | 72. A | 73. B | 74. B | 75. A |
| 76. C | 77. A | 78. D | 79. C | 80. B |
| 81. B | 82. A | 83. D | 84. B | 85. A |
| 86. D | 87. A | 88. B | 89. B | 90. D |
| 91. C | 92. B | 93. C | 94. D | 95. A |
| 96. C | 97. C | 98. C | 99. D | 100. D |
| 101. B | 102. B | 103. D | 104. C | 105. A |
| 106. C | 107. C | 108. C | 109. C | 110. B |
| 111. C | 112. C | 113. B | 114. B | 115. B |
| 116. B | 117. D | 118. C | 119. D | 120. C |
| 121. A | 122. B | 123. B | 124. C | 125. A |
| 126. D | 127. A | 128. B | 129. A | 130. B |

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 131. A | 132. D | 133. D | 134. B | 135. B |
| 136. B | 137. B | 138. C | 139. B | 140. C |
| 141. B | 142. A | 143. A | 144. B | 145. D |
| 146. B | 147. A | 148. A | 149. C | 150. D |

UNIT 17: PHONETICS – NGỮ ÂM

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 11. A | 21. B | 31. D | 41. D |
| 2. D | 12. A | 22. D | 32. A | 42. C |
| 3. A | 13. C | 23. D | 33. B | 43. A |
| 4. D | 14. B | 24. A | 34. D | 44. A |
| 5. B | 15. D | 25. A | 35. D | 45. A |
| 6. B | 16. D | 26. D | 36. A | 46. A |
| 7. D | 17. A | 27. D | 37. D | 47. A |
| 8. C | 18. C | 28. C | 38. C | 48. A |
| 9. A | 19. C | 29. C | 39. D | 49. A |
| 10. D | 20. B | 30. B | 40. A | 50. A |

B.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 51. A | 61. B | 71. A | 81. C | 91. B |
| 52. D | 62. C | 72. C | 82. C | 92. D |
| 53. B | 63. C | 73. D | 83. A | 93. A |
| 54. B | 64. B | 74. C | 84. B | 94. B |
| 55. A | 65. C | 75. B | 85. B | 95. C |
| 56. C | 66. A | 76. D | 86. A | 96. D |
| 57. A | 67. B | 77. A | 87. D | 97. C |
| 58. D | 68. B | 78. D | 88. D | 98. A |
| 59. A | 69. C | 79. D | 89. C | 99. B |
| 60. B | 70. D | 80. A | 90. A | 100. D |

Mục lục

UNIT 1	PART OF SPEECH – <i>TỪ LOẠI</i>	5
UNIT 2	TENSES – <i>CÁC THÌ</i>	43
UNIT 3	PASSIVE VOICE – <i>CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG</i>	63
UNIT 4	TAG QUESTIONS – <i>CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI</i>	76
UNIT 5	ADVERBIAL CLAUSES AND CONNECTORS	79
	<i>MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ VÀ TỪ NÓI</i>	
UNIT 6	SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT.....	93
	<i>SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ</i>	
UNIT 7	CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES.....	99
	<i>CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN VÀ CÂU AO ƯỚC</i>	
UNIT 8	GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES	115
	<i>DANH ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THÊ</i>	
UNIT 9	QUANTITATIVE WORD	129
	<i>TỪ CHỈ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG</i>	
UNIT 10	PARTICIPE USED AS ADJECTIVE.....	137
	<i>PHÂN TỪ DÙNG NHƯ TÍNH TỪ</i>	
UNIT 11	RELATIVE CLAUSES	139
	<i>MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ</i>	
UNIT 12	REPORTED SPEECH.....	154
	<i>CÂU GIÁN TIẾP</i>	
UNIT 13	COMPARISONS – <i>SO SÁNH</i>	169
UNIT 14	COMMON STRUCTURES	184
	<i>CÁC CÂU TRÚC CÂU THƯỜNG GẶP</i>	
UNIT 15	INVERSION – <i>SỰ ĐÁO NGỮ</i>	202
UNIT 16	SPEAKING – <i>GIAO TIẾP</i>	215
UNIT 17	PHONETICS - <i>NGỮ ÂM</i>	236
KEY	243